

The Zork I Z-machine Interpreter

Robert Baruch

Contents

1	Zork I	8
1.1	Introduction	8
1.2	About this document	8
1.3	Extracting the sections	9
2	Programming techniques	10
2.1	Zero page temporaries	10
2.2	Tail calls	10
2.3	Unconditional branches	10
2.4	Stretchy branches	11
2.5	Shared code	11
2.6	Macros	11
2.6.1	STOW, STOW2	11
2.6.2	MOVB, MOVW, STOB	12
2.6.3	PSHW, PULB, PULW	13
2.6.4	INCW	14
2.6.5	ADDA, ADDAC, ADDB, ADDB2, ADDW, ADDWC	15
2.6.6	SUBB, SUBB2, SUBW	17
2.6.7	ROLW, RORW	18

3	The boot process	20
3.1	BOOT1	20
3.2	BOOT2	25
4	The main program	29
5	The Z-stack	38
6	Z-code	40
7	I/O	50
7.1	Strings and output	50
7.1.1	The Apple II text screen	50
7.1.2	The text buffer	53
7.1.3	Z-coded strings	63
7.1.4	Input	74
7.1.5	Lexical parsing	76
8	Arithmetic routines	98
8.1	Negation and sign manipulation	98
8.2	16-bit multiplication	101
8.3	16-bit division	102
8.4	16-bit comparison	105
8.5	Other routines	106
8.6	Printing numbers	107
9	Disk routines	109

10 The instruction dispatcher	113
10.1 Executing an instruction	113
10.2 Retrieving the instruction	116
10.3 Decoding the instruction	117
10.3.1 0op instructions	117
10.3.2 1op instructions	118
10.3.3 2op instructions	120
10.3.4 varop instructions	122
10.4 Getting the instruction operands	124
11 Calls and returns	129
11.1 Call	129
11.2 Return	133
12 Objects	136
12.1 Object table format	136
12.2 Getting an object's address	136
12.3 Removing an object	138
12.4 Object strings	141
12.5 Object attributes	142
12.6 Object properties	144
13 Saving and restoring the game	147
13.0.1 Save prompts for the user	147
13.0.2 Saving the game state	153
13.0.3 Restoring the game state	156

14 Instructions	160
14.1 Instruction utilities	162
14.1.1 Handling branches	165
14.2 Data movement instructions	169
14.2.1 load	169
14.2.2 loadw	169
14.2.3 loadb	170
14.2.4 store	170
14.2.5 storew	171
14.2.6 storeb	172
14.3 Stack instructions	172
14.3.1 pop	172
14.3.2 pull	173
14.3.3 push	173
14.4 Decrements and increments	173
14.4.1 inc	173
14.4.2 dec	174
14.5 Arithmetic instructions	174
14.5.1 add	174
14.5.2 div	175
14.5.3 mod	176
14.5.4 mul	177
14.5.5 random	178
14.5.6 sub	178
14.6 Logical instructions	179
14.6.1 and	179

14.6.2	not	179
14.6.3	or	180
14.7	Conditional branch instructions	180
14.7.1	dec_chk	180
14.7.2	inc_chk	181
14.7.3	je	181
14.7.4	jg	183
14.7.5	jin	183
14.7.6	jl	184
14.7.7	jz	184
14.7.8	test	185
14.7.9	test_attr	185
14.8	Jump and subroutine instructions	186
14.8.1	call	186
14.8.2	jump	186
14.8.3	print_ret	186
14.8.4	ret	187
14.8.5	ret_popped	187
14.8.6	rfalse	187
14.8.7	rtrue	188
14.9	Print instructions	188
14.9.1	new_line	188
14.9.2	print	189
14.9.3	print_addr	189
14.9.4	print_char	189
14.9.5	print_num	190

14.9.6	print_obj	190
14.9.7	print_paddr	190
14.10	Object instructions	191
14.10.1	clear_attr	191
14.10.2	get_child	192
14.10.3	get_next_prop	193
14.10.4	get_parent	194
14.10.5	get_prop	195
14.10.6	get_prop_addr	198
14.10.7	get_prop_len	199
14.10.8	get_sibling	200
14.10.9	insert_obj	201
14.10.10	put_prop	202
14.10.11	remove_obj	203
14.10.12	set_attr	203
14.11	Other instructions	204
14.11.1	nop	204
14.11.2	restart	204
14.11.3	restore	205
14.11.4	quit	205
14.11.5	save	205
14.11.6	sread	205
15	The entire program	206
16	Defined Chunks	216
17	Appendix: RWTS	221

August 4, 2024

main.nw 7

18 Index

251

Chapter 1

Zork I

1.1 Introduction

Zork I: The Great Underground Empire was an Infocom text adventure originally written as part of Zork in 1977 by Tim Anderson, Marc Blank, Bruce Daniels, and Dave Lebling. The game runs under a virtual machine called the Z-Machine. Thus, only the Z-Machine interpreter needed to be ported for the game to be playable on various machines.

The purpose of this document is to reverse engineer the Z-Machine interpreter found in the revision 15 version of Zork I for the Apple II. The disk image used is from the Internet Archive:

- [Zork I, revision 15 \(ZorkI_r15.4amCrack\)](#)

The original Infocom assembly language files are [available](#). The directory for the Apple II contains the original source code for various Z-Machine interpreters. Version 3 is called ZIP, version 4 is EZIP, version 5 is XZIP, and version 6 is YZIP. There is also a directory OLDZIP which seems to correspond to this version, version 2, although there are a few differences.

1.2 About this document

All files can be found on [Github](#).

The source for this document, `main.nw`, is a literate programming document. This means the explanatory text is interspersed with source code. The assembly code and `LaTeX` file can be extracted from the document and compiled.

The goal is to provide all the source code necessary to reproduce a binary identical to the one found on the Internet Archive's `ZorkI_r15_4amCrack` disk image.

The code was reverse-engineered using Ghidra.

The assembly code was assembled using `dasm`.

The document is written in `LaTeX`.

This document doesn't explain every last detail. It's assumed that the reader can find enough details on the 6502 processor and the Apple II series of computers to fill in the gaps.

1.3 Extracting the sections

The disk image contains the following sections. Note that the disk has 16 sectors per track, and we will refer to tracks and sectors only by `16 * track + sector`.

- Sector 0: `B00T1`, target address `$0800`: The first stage boot loader.
- Sector 0-9: `B00T2`, target address `$2200`: The second stage boot loader, loaded by `B00T1`.
- Sector 16-41: `main`, target address `$0800`: The main program, loaded by `B00T2`.

The sections can be extracted from the disk image using the following commands:

```
python -m extract --first 0 -n 1 -i "Zork I r15 (4am crack).dsk" -o boot1.bin
python -m extract --first 1 -n 9 -i "Zork I r15 (4am crack).dsk" -o boot2.bin
python -m extract --first 16 -n 26 -i "Zork I r15 (4am crack).dsk" -o main.bin
```

We extract `B00T2` only starting from sector 1, since the first page is just a copy of `B00T1`.

Chapter 2

Programming techniques

2.1 Zero page temporaries

Zero-page consists essentially of global variables. Sometimes we need local temporaries, and Apple II programs mostly doesn't use the stack for those. Rather, some "global" variables are reserved for temporaries. You might see multiple symbols equated to a single zero-page location. The names of such symbols are used to make sense within their context.

2.2 Tail calls

Rather than a `JSR` immediately followed by an `RTS`, instead a `JMP` can be used to save stack space, code space, and time. This is known as a tail call, because it is a call that happens at the tail of a function.

2.3 Unconditional branches

The 6502 doesn't have an unconditional short jump. However, if you can find a condition that is always true, this can serve as an unconditional short jump, which saves space and time.

2.4 Stretchy branches

6502 branches have a limit to how far they can jump. If they really need to jump farther than that, you have to put a **JMP** or an unconditional branch within reach.

2.5 Shared code

To save space, sometimes code at the end of one function is also useful to the next function, as long as it is within reach. This can save space, at the expense of functions being completely independent.

2.6 Macros

The original Infocom source code uses macros for moving data around, and we will adopt these macros (with different names) and more to make our assembly language listings a little less verbose.

2.6.1 STOW, STOW2

STOW stores a 16-bit literal value to a memory location.

For example, **STOW #01FF, 0200** stores the 16-bit value **#01FF** to memory location **0200** (of course in little-endian order).

This is the same as **MOVEI** in the original Infocom source code.

```

11  <Macros 11>≡ (206 207a) 12a>
      MACRO STOW
          LDA    #{1}
          STA    {2}
          LDA    #{1}
          STA    {2}+1
      ENDM

```

Defines:

STOW, used in chunks 30–32, 57, 101, 104, 107, 111, 112, 117b, 119b, 121c, 123, 129, 134b, 143a, 147, 149, 151–55, 157b, 158a, and 205.

STOW2 does the same, but in the opposite order. Parts of the code were written by different programmers at different times, so it's possible that the MOVEI macro was used inconsistently.

```
12a  <Macros 11>+≡ (206 207a) <11 12b>
      MACRO STOW2
          LDA    #>{1}
          STA    {2}+1
          LDA    #<{1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

STOW2, used in chunk 112.

2.6.2 MOVW, MOVW, STOB

MOVW moves a byte from one memory location to another, while STOB stores a literal byte to a memory location. The implementation is identical, and the only difference is documentation.

For example, MOVW \$01, \$0200 moves the byte at memory location \$01 to memory location \$0200, while STOB #\$01, \$0200 stores the byte #\$01 to memory location \$0200.

These macros are the same as MOVE in the original Infocom source code.

```
12b  <Macros 11>+≡ (206 207a) <12a 13a>
      MACRO MOVW
          LDA    {1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
      MACRO STOB
          LDA    {1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

MOVW, used in chunks 22d, 37, 87a, 130a, 132–34, and 185a.

STOB, used in chunks 21c, 26a, 30, 31b, 65, 107, 116, 118d, 121a, 130a, 132a, and 135.

MOVW moves a 16-bit value from one memory location to the another.

For example, MOVW \$01FF, \$A000 moves the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF to memory location \$A000.

This is the same as MOVEW in the original Infocom source code.

13a $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 12b \ 13b \rangle$

```

MACRO MOVW
    LDA    {1}
    STA    {2}
    LDA    {1}+1
    STA    {2}+1
ENDM

```

Defines:

MOVW, used in chunks 32b, 101, 104, 116, 118d, 120, 130a, 132–35, 141, 155b, 158b, 170b, 173b, 175–78, 180b, 181a, 183a, 184a, 186a, 187a, 189, 190, and 197.

2.6.3 PSHW, PULB, PULW

PSHW is a macro that pushes a 16-bit value in memory onto the 6502 stack.

For example, PSHW \$01FF pushes the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF onto the 6502 stack.

This is the same as PUSHW in the original Infocom source code.

13b $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 13a \ 13c \rangle$

```

MACRO PSHW
    LDA    {1}
    PHA
    LDA    {1}+1
    PHA
ENDM

```

Defines:

PSHW, used in chunks 101, 104, 164a, and 201.

PULB is a macro that pulls an 8-bit value from the 6502 stack to memory.

For example, PULB \$01FF pulls an 8-bit value from the 6502 stack and stores it at memory location \$01FF.

13c $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 13b \ 14a \rangle$

```

MACRO PULB
    PLA
    STA    {1}
ENDM

```

Defines:

PULB, used in chunk 132b.

PULW is a macro that pulls a 16-bit value from the 6502 stack to memory.

For example, PULW \$01FF pulls a 16-bit value from the 6502 stack and stores it at memory location \$01FF.

This is the same as PULLW in the original Infocom source code.

```
14a  <Macros 11>+≡ (206 207a) <13c 14b>
      MACRO PULW
          PLA
          STA {1}+1
          PLA
          STA {1}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

PULW, used in chunks 101, 104, 164a, and 201.

2.6.4 INCW

INCW is a macro that increments a 16-bit value in memory.

For example, INCW \$01FF increments the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF.

This is the same as INCW in the original Infocom source code.

```
14b  <Macros 11>+≡ (206 207a) <14a 15a>
      MACRO INCW
          INC {1}
          BNE .continue
          INC {1}+1
      .continue
      ENDM
```

Defines:

INCW, used in chunks 39, 111, 112, 141, 142, 164a, 178a, and 198.

2.6.5 ADDA, ADDAC, ADDB, ADDB2, ADDW, ADDWC

ADDA is a macro that adds the A register to a 16-bit memory location.

For example, `ADDA $01FF` adds the contents of the A register to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`.

15a $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 14b \ 15b \rangle$

```

MACRO ADDA
    CLC
    ADC    {1}
    STA    {1}
    BCC    .continue
    INC    {1}+1
    .continue
ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDA, used in chunks 94 and 134b.

ADDAC is a macro that adds the A register, and whatever the carry flag is set to, to a 16-bit memory location.

15b $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 15a \ 16a \rangle$

```

MACRO ADDAC
    ADC    {1}
    STA    {1}
    BCC    .continue
    INC    {1}+1
    .continue
ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDAC, used in chunk 198.

ADDB is a macro that adds an 8-bit immediate value, or the 8-bit contents of memory, to a 16-bit memory location.

For example, `ADDB $01FF, #$01` adds the immediate value `#$01` to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`, while `ADDB $01FF, $0300` adds the 8-bit value at memory location `$0300` to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`.

This is the same as `ADDB` in the original Infocom source code. The immediate value is the second argument.

16a $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) <15b 16b>

```

        MACRO  ADDB
            LDA    {1}
            CLC
            ADC     {2}
            STA     {1}
            BCC     .continue
            INC     {1}+1
        .continue
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDB, used in chunks 149 and 151b.

ADDB2 is the same as `ADDB` except that it swaps the initial `CLC` and `LDA` instructions.

16b $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) <16a 16c>

```

        MACRO  ADDB2
            CLC
            LDA    {1}
            ADC     {2}
            STA     {1}
            BCC     .continue
            INC     {1}+1
        .continue
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDB2, used in chunks 95 and 96.

ADDW is a macro that adds two 16-bit values in memory and stores it to a third 16-bit memory location.

16c $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) <16b 17a>

```

        MACRO  ADDW
            CLC
            ADDWC  {1}, {2}, {3}
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDW, used in chunks 76, 93, 144, 169–72, and 174b.

Uses `ADDWC` 17a.

ADDWC is a macro that adds two 16-bit values in memory, plus the carry bit, and stores it to a third 16-bit memory location.

17a $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 16c \ 17b \rangle$

```

MACRO ADDWC
    LDA    {1}
    ADC    {2}
    STA    {3}
    LDA    {1}+1
    ADC    {2}+1
    STA    {3}+1
ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDWC, used in chunks 16c and 101.

2.6.6 SUBB, SUBB2, SUBW

SUBB is a macro that subtracts an 8-bit value from a 16-bit memory location. This is the same as SUBB in the original Infocom source code. The immediate value is the second argument.

17b $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 17a \ 18a \rangle$

```

MACRO SUBB
    LDA    {1}
    SEC
    SBC    {2}
    STA    {1}
    BCS    .continue
    DEC    {1}+1
    .continue
ENDM

```

Defines:

SUBB, used in chunks 38, 96, 134c, 164b, 167b, and 186a.

SUBB2 is the same as SUBB except that it swaps the initial SEC and LDA instructions.

18a $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 17b \ 18b \rangle$

```

    MACRO SUBB2
        SEC
        LDA    {1}
        SBC    {2}
        STA    {1}
        BCS    .continue
        DEC    {1}+1
    .continue
    ENDM

```

Defines:
SUBB2, used in chunk 95b.

SUBW is a macro that subtracts the 16-bit memory value in the second argument from a 16-bit memory location in the first argument, and stores it in the 16-bit memory location in the third argument.

18b $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 18a \ 18c \rangle$

```

    MACRO SUBW
        SEC
        LDA    {1}
        SBC    {2}
        STA    {3}
        LDA    {1}+1
        SBC    {2}+1
        STA    {3}+1
    ENDM

```

Defines:
SUBW, used in chunks 97b, 98, 178c, and 198.

2.6.7 ROLW, RORW

ROLW rotates a 16-bit memory location left.

18c $\langle \text{Macros } 11 \rangle + \equiv$ (206 207a) $\langle 18b \ 19 \rangle$

```

    MACRO ROLW
        ROL    {1}
        ROL    {1}+1
    ENDM

```

Defines:
ROLW, used in chunk 104.

RORW rotates a 16-bit memory location right.

```
19  <Macros 11>+≡ (206 207a) <18c
      MACRO RORW
          ROR    {1}+1
          ROR    {1}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

RORW, used in chunk 101.

Chapter 3

The boot process

Suggested reading: *Beneath Apple DOS* (Don Worth, Pieter Lechner, 1982) page 5-6, [“What happens during booting”](#).

We will only examine the boot process in order to get to the main program. The boot process may just be the way the 4am disk image works, so should not be taken as original to Zork.

We will be doing a deep dive into `BOOT1`, since it is fairly easy to understand.

Apple II programs originally came on disk, and such disks are generally bootable. You’d put the disk in Drive 1, reset the computer, and the disk card ROM then loads the `BOOT1` section of the disk. This section starts from track 0 sector 0, and is almost always 1 sector (256 bytes) long. The data is stored to location `$0800` and then the disk card ROM causes the CPU to jump to location `$0801`. The very first byte in track 0 sector 0 is the number of sectors in this `BOOT1` section, and again, this is almost always 1.

After the disk card reads `BOOT1`, the zero-page location `IWMDATAPTR` is left as the pointer to the buffer to next read data into, so `$0900`. The location `IWMSLTNDX` is the disk card’s slot index (slot times 16).

3.1 `BOOT1`

`BOOT1` reads a number of sectors from track 0, backwards from a starting sector, down to sector 0. The sector to read is stored in `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM`, and is initially 9 for Zork I release 15. The RAM address to read the sectors to is

stored in `BOOT1.WRITE_ADDR`, and it is `$2200`. Thus, `BOOT1` will read sectors 0 through 9 into address `$2200 - $2BFF`.

```
21a  <BOOT1 21a>≡ (206a) 21b>
      BYTE    #$01 ; Number of sectors in BOOT1. Almost always 1.
      boot1:
      SUBROUTINE
```

Defines:

`boot1`, never used.

Reading `BOOT2` involves repeatedly calling the disk card ROM's sector read routine with appropriate parameters. But first, we have to initialize some variables.

The reason we have to check whether `BOOT1` has already been initialized is that the disk card ROM's `RDSECT` routine jumps back to `BOOT1` after reading a sector.

Checking for initialization is as simple as checking the `IWMDATAPTR` page against `09`. If it's `09` then we have just finished reading `BOOT1`, and this is the first call to `BOOT1`, so we need to initialize. Otherwise, we can skip initialization.

```
21b  <BOOT1 21a>+≡ (206a) <21a 21c>
      LDA     IWMDATAPTR+1
      CMP     #$09
      BNE     .already_initted
      Uses IWMDATAPTR 208.
```

To initialize the `BOOT1` variables, we first determine the disk card ROM's `RDSECT` routine address. This is simply `$CX5C`, where `X` is the disk card's slot number.

```
21c  <BOOT1 21a>+≡ (206a) <21b 22a>
      LDA     IWMSLTNDX ; The slot we're booting from, times 16.
      LSR
      LSR
      LSR
      LSR
      ORA     #$C0
      STA     RDSECT_PTR+1
      STOB    #$5C, RDSECT_PTR
      Uses IWMSLTNDX 208, RDSECT_PTR 208, and STOB 12b.
```

Next, we initialize the address to read disk data into. Since we're reading backwards, we start by adding `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM` to the page number in `BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR`.

```
22a  <BOOT1 21a>+≡ (206a) <21c 22b>
      CLC
      LDA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      ADC    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
      STA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      Uses BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 24b and BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR 24b.
```

Now that `BOOT1` has been initialized, we can set up the parameters for the next read. This means loading up `IWMSECTOR` with the sector in track 0 to read, `IWMDATAPTR` with the address to read data into, and loading the X register with the slot index (slot times 16).

First we check whether we've read all sectors by checking whether `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM` is less than zero - recall that we are reading sectors from last down to 0.

```
22b  <BOOT1 21a>+≡ (206a) <22a 22c>
      .already_inittd:
      LDX    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
      BMI    .go_to_boot2      ; Are we done?
      Defines:
      .already_inittd, never used.
      Uses BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 24b.
```

We set up `IWMSECTOR` by taking the sector number and translating it to a physical sector on the disk using a translation table. This has to do with the way sectors on disk are interleaved for efficiency.

```
22c  <BOOT1 21a>+≡ (206a) <22b 22d>
      LDA    BOOT1_SECTOR_XLAT_TABLE,X
      STA    IWMSECTOR
      Uses BOOT1_SECTOR_XLAT_TABLE 23b and IWMSECTOR 208.
```

Then we transfer the page of `BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR` into the page of `IWMDATAPTR`, decrement `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM`, load up the X register with `IWMSLTNDX`, and do the read by jumping to the address in `RDSECT_PTR`. Remember that when that routine finishes, it jumps back to `boot1`.

```
22d  <BOOT1 21a>+≡ (206a) <22c 23a>
      DEC    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
      MOVB    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1, IWMDATAPTR+1
      DEC    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      LDX    IWMSLTNDX
      JMP    (RDSECT_PTR)
      Uses BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 24b, BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR 24b, IWMDATAPTR 208, IWMSLTNDX 208,
      MOVB 12b, and RDSECT_PTR 208.
```

Once BOOT1 has finished loading, it jumps to what got loaded from sector 1. This is called BOOT2, the 2nd stage boot loader.

Note that because we read down to sector 0, and BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR got post-decremented, BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR points to one page before sector 0. Incrementing once would have it point to a copy of BOOT1, which we don't need. Therefore, we increment twice.

```

23a  <BOOT1 21a>+≡ (206a) <22d 23b>
      .go_to_boot2
      INC     BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      INC     BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1

      ; Set keyboard and screen as I/O, set all soft switches to defaults,
      ; e.g. text mode, lores graphics, etc.

      JSR     SETKBD
      JSR     SETVID
      JSR     INIT

      ; Go to BOOT2!

      LDX     IWMSLTNDX
      JMP     (BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR)

```

Defines:

.go_to_boot2, never used.

Uses BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR 24b, INIT 208, IWMSLTNDX 208, SETKBD 208, and SETVID 208.

```

23b  <BOOT1 21a>+≡ (206a) <23a 24a>
      BOOT1_SECTOR_XLAT_TABLE:
      HEX     00 0D 0B 09 07 05 03 01
      HEX     0E 0C 0A 08 06 04 02 0F

```

Defines:

BOOT1_SECTOR_XLAT_TABLE, used in chunk 22c.

The rest of the data in `BOOT1` seems to contain unused garbage.

$$\langle BOOT1 \text{ 21a} \rangle + \equiv \quad (206a) \quad \triangleleft 23b \text{ 24b} \triangleright$$

```

HEX      00 20 64
HEX      27 B0 08 A9 00 A8 8D 5D
HEX      36 91 40 AD C5 35 4C D2
HEX      26 AD 5D 36 F0 08 EE BD
HEX      35 D0 03 EE BE 35 A9 00
HEX      8D 5D 36 4C 46 25 8D BC
HEX      35 20 A8 26 20 EA 22 4C
HEX      7D 22 A0 13 B1 42 D0 14
HEX      C8 C0 17 D0 F7 A0 19 B1
HEX      42 99 A4 35 C8 C0 1D D0
HEX      F6 4C BC 26 A2 FF 8E 5D
HEX      36 D0 F6 00 00 00 00 00
HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
HEX      20 58 FC A9 C2 20 ED FD ; seems to be part of the monitor
HEX      A9 01 20 DA FD A9 AD 20
HEX      ED FD A9 00 20 DA FD 60
HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
HEX      00 00 00 00 00

```

$$\langle BOOT1 \text{ 21a} \rangle + \equiv \quad (206a) \quad \triangleleft 24a$$

```

BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR:
    HEX    00 22
BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM:
    HEX    09

```

Defines:

BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM, used in chunk 22.
 BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR, used in chunks 22 and 23a.

3.2 BOOT2

In normal DOS, BOOT2 is the 2nd stage boot loader. See Beneath Apple DOS, page 8-34, description of address \$B700. However in this case, it looks like the programmers modified the first page of the standard BOOT2 loader so that it instead loads the main program from disk and then jumps to it.

Zork's BOOT2 loads 26 sectors starting from track 1 sector 0 into addresses \$0800-\$21FF, and then jumps to \$0800. It also contains all the low-level disk routines from DOS, which includes RWTS, the read/write track/sector routine.

We will only look at the main part of BOOT2, not any of the low-level disk routines.

```

25  <BOOT2 25>≡ (206b) 26a>
    boot2:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #$1F
        STA    $7B

    .loop:
        LDA    #>boot2_iob          ; call RWTS with IOB
        LDY    #<boot2_iob
        JSR    RWTS_entry
        BCS    .loop                ; on error, try again

        INC    sector_count
        LDA    sector_count
        CMP    #26
        BEQ    .start_main          ; done loading 26 sectors?

        INC    boot2_iob.buffer+1   ; increment page
        INC    boot2_iob.sector     ; increment sector and track
        LDA    boot2_iob.sector
        CMP    #16
        BNE    .loop

        LDA    #$00
        STA    boot2_iob.sector
        INC    boot2_iob.track
        JMP    .loop

```

Defines:

boot2, never used.

Uses RWTS 209, RWTS_entry 236, boot2_iob 27a, and sector_count 26a.

```

.start_main:
    STOB    #$60, DEBUG_JUMP      ; an RTS instruction
    STOB    #16, SECTORS_PER_TRACK
    JSR     INIT
    JSR     SETVID
    JSR     SETKBD
    JMP     main

```

Defines:

sector_count, used in chunk 25.

Uses `DEBUG.JUMP` 209, `INIT` 208, `SECTORS_PER_TRACK` 209, `SETKBD` 208, `SETVID` 208, `STOB` 12b, and `main` 29a.

$$\textcolor{red}{26b} \quad \langle \textcolor{red}{BOOT2} \textcolor{red}{25} \rangle + \equiv \quad \quad \quad (206b) \quad \triangleleft \textcolor{red}{26a} \textcolor{red}{27a} \triangleright$$
[illegible]

The RWTS parameter list (I/O block):

```

27a  <BOOT2 25>+≡ (206b) <26b 27b>
      boot2_iob:
          HEX      01      ; table type, must be 1
          HEX      60      ; slot times 16
          HEX      01      ; drive number
          HEX      00      ; volume number
      boot2_iob.track:
          HEX      01      ; track number
      boot2_iob.sector:
          HEX      00      ; sector number
      boot2_iob.dct_addr:
          WORD      boot2_dct ; address of device characteristics table
      boot2_iob.buffer:
          WORD      #$0800    ; address of buffer
          HEX      00 00
      boot2_iob.command:
          HEX      01      ; command byte (read)
          HEX      00      ; return code
          HEX      00      ; last volume number
          HEX      60      ; last slot times 16
          HEX      01      ; last drive number

```

Defines:

```

boot2_iob, used in chunk 25.
boot2_iob.buffer, never used.
boot2_iob.command, never used.
boot2_iob.dct_addr, never used.
boot2_iob.sector, never used.
boot2_iob.track, never used.

```

Uses boot2_dct 27b.

The Device Characteristics Table:

```

27b  <BOOT2 25>+≡ (206b) <27a 28a>
      boot2_dct:
          HEX      00      ; device type, must be 0
          HEX      01      ; phases per track, must be 1
          WORD      #$D8EF  ; motor on time count

```

Defines:

```

boot2_dct, used in chunk 27a.

```

Some bytes apparently left over and unzeroed, and then zeros to the end of the page.

28a

$\langle BOOT2\ 25 \rangle + \equiv$

HEX

00 00 00

HEX

00 00 00 00 00 00 DE 00

HEX

00 00 02 00 01 01 00 00

HEX

00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

HEX

00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

HEX

00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

(206b)

$\triangleleft 27b\ 28b \triangleright$

28b

$\langle BOOT2\ 25 \rangle + \equiv$

$\langle RWTS\ routines\ 250 \rangle$

(206b)

$\triangleleft 28a$

Chapter 4

The main program

This is the Z-machine proper.

We first clear out the top half of zero page (\$80-\$FF).

```
29a  <main 29a>≡ (212) 29b>
      main:
        SUBROUTINE

        CLD
        LDA    #$00
        LDY    #$80

        .clear:
          STA    $80,X
          INY
          BNE    .clear
```

Defines:

main, used in chunks 26a, 32b, 33, 43, 46, 204b, and 206b.

And we reset the 6502 stack pointer.

```
29b  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <29a 30>
      LDY    #$FF
      TXS
```

Next, we set up some variables. The printer output routine, `PRINTER_CSW`, is set to `$C100`. This is the address of the ROM of the card in slot 1, which is typically the printer card. It will be used later when outputting text to both screen and printer.

Next, we set `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` to zero, which will later cause the Z-machine to load the first page of Z-code into memory when the first instruction is retrieved.

The z-stack count, `STACK_COUNT`, is set to 1, and the z-stack pointer, `Z_SP`, is set to `$03E8`.

There are two page tables, `PAGE_L_TABLE` and `PAGE_H_TABLE`, which are set to `$2200` and `$2280`, respectively. These are used to map Z-machine memory pages to physical memory pages.

There are two other page tables, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` and `PREV_PAGE_TABLE`, which are set to `$2300` and `$2380`, respectively. Together this forms a doubly-linked list of pages.

```
30  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <29b 31a>
    .set_vars:
        ; Historical note: Setting PRINTER_CSW was originally a call to SINIT,
        ; "system-dependent initialization".
        LDA    #$C1
        STA    PRINTER_CSW+1
        LDA    #$00
        STA    PRINTER_CSW
        LDA    #$00
        STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        STOB   #$01, STACK_COUNT
        STOW   #$03E8, Z_SP
        STOB   #$FF, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1+6
        STOW   #$2200, PAGE_L_TABLE
        STOW   #$2280, PAGE_H_TABLE
        STOW   #$2300, NEXT_PAGE_TABLE
        STOW   #$2380, PREV_PAGE_TABLE
    Uses NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 209, PAGE_H_TABLE 209, PAGE_L_TABLE 209, PREV_PAGE_TABLE 209,
    PRINTER_CSW 209, STACK_COUNT 209, STOB 12b, STOW 11, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 209,
    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 209, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2 209, and Z_SP 209.
```

Next, we initialize the page tables. This zeros out `PAGE_L_TABLE` and `PAGE_H_TABLE`, and then sets up the next and previous page tables. `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` is initialized to `01 02 03 ... 7F FF` and so on, while `PREV_PAGE_TABLE` is initialized to `FF 00 01 ... 7D 7E FF`. `FF` is the null pointer for this linked list.

```

31a  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <30 31b>
      LDY      #$00
      LDX      #$80      ; Max pages

      .loop_inc_dec_tables:
      LDA      #$00
      STA      (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
      STA      (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
      TYA
      CLC
      ADC      #$01
      STA      (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      TYA
      SEC
      SBC      #$01
      STA      (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      INY
      DEX
      BNE      .loop_inc_dec_tables
      DEY
      LDA      #$FF
      STA      (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y

```

Uses `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 209`, `PAGE_H_TABLE 209`, `PAGE_L_TABLE 209`, and `PREV_PAGE_TABLE 209`.

Next, we set `FIRST_Z_PAGE` to 0 (the head of the list), `LAST_Z_PAGE` to `#$7F` (the tail of the list), and `Z_HEADER_ADDR` to `$2C00`. `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is the address in memory where the Z-code image header is stored.

```

31b  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <31a 31c>
      STOB     #$00, FIRST_Z_PAGE
      STOB     #$7F, LAST_Z_PAGE
      STOW     #$2C00, Z_HEADER_ADDR

```

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE 209`, `LAST_Z_PAGE 209`, `STOB 12b`, and `STOW 11`.

Then we clear the screen.

```

31c  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <31b 32b>
      JSR      do_reset_window

```

Uses `do_reset_window 32a`.

32a \langle Do reset window 32a $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

do_reset_window:
    JSR     reset_window
    RTS

```

Defines:
 do_reset_window, used in chunk 31c.
 Uses reset_window 52.

Next, we start reading the image of Z-code from disk into memory. The first page of the image, which is the image header, gets loaded into the address stored in Z_HEADER_ADDR. This done through the read_from_sector routine, which reads the (256 byte) sector stored in SCRATCH1, relative to track 3 sector 0, into the address stored in SCRATCH2.

If there was an error reading, we jump back to the beginning of the main program and start again. This would result in a failure loop with no apparent output if the disk is damaged.

32b \langle main 29a $\rangle + \equiv$ (212) \langle 31c 33 \rangle

```

.read_z_image:
    MOVW    Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
    STOW    #$0000, SCRATCH1
    JSR     read_from_sector

    ; Historical note: The original Infocom source code did not check
    ; for an error here.

    BCC     .no_error
    JMP     main

```

Uses MOVW 13a, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, main 29a, and read_from_sector 111.

If there was no error reading the image header, we write `#$FF` into byte 5 of the header, whose purpose is not known at this point. Then we load byte 4 of the header, which is the page for the “base of high memory”, and store it (plus 1) in `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES`.

Then, we read `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES-1` consecutive sectors after the header into consecutive memory.

Suppose `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is `$2C00`. We have already read the header sector in. Now suppose the base of high memory in the header is `#$01F6`. Then `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES` would be `#$02`, and we would read one sector into memory at `$2D00`.

In the case of Zork I, `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is `$2C00`, and the base of high memory is `#$47FF`. `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES` is thus `#$48`. So, we would read 71 more sectors into memory, from `$2D00` to `$73FF`.

```

33  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <32b 34a>
    .no_error:
        LDY    #$05
        LDA    #$FF
        STA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        DEY
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        INC    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        LDA    #$00

    .read_another_sector:
        CLC                                ; "START2"
        ADC    #$01
        TAX
        ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA    SCRATCH2+1
        LDA    Z_HEADER_ADDR
        STA    SCRATCH2
        TXA
        CMP    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        BEQ    .check_bit_0_flag    ; done loading
        PHA
        STA    SCRATCH1
        LDA    #$00
        STA    SCRATCH1+1
        JSR    read_from_sector

        ; Historical note: The original Infocom source code did not check
        ; for an error here.

        BCC    .no_error2
        JMP    main

```

```

.no_error2:
    PLA
    JMP      .read_another_sector
Uses NUM_IMAGE_PAGES 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, main 29a, and read_from_sector 111.

```

Next, we check the debug-on-start flag stored in bit 0 of byte 1 of the header, and if it isn't clear, we execute a BRK instruction. That drops the Apple II into its monitor, which allows debugging, however primitive by our modern standards.

This part was not in the original Infocom source code.

```

34a  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <33 34d>
      .check_bit_0_flag:
          LDY      #$01
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          AND      #$01
          EOR      #$01
          BEQ      .brk
Uses brk 34c.

34b  <die 34b>≡ (36b)
      .brk:
          JSR      brk
Uses brk 34c.

34c  <brk 34c>≡ (212)
      brk:
          BRK
Defines:
      brk, used in chunks 34, 36a, 38, 39, 162, 181b, 197, and 202.

```

Continuing after the load, we set the 24-bit Z_PC program counter to its initial 16-bit value, which is stored in the header at bytes 6 and 7, bigendian. For Zork I, Z_PC becomes #\$004859.

```

34d  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <34a 35>
      .store_initial_z_pc:
          LDY      #$07
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA      Z_PC
          DEY
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA      Z_PC+1
          LDA      #$00
          STA      Z_PC+2
Uses Z_PC 209.

```

Next, we load `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE` from the header at bytes `#$0C-$0D` and `#$18-$19`, respectively. Again, these are bigendian values, so get byte-swapped. These are relative to the beginning of the image, so we simply add the page of the image address to them. There is no need to add the low byte of the header address, since the header already begins on a page boundary.

For Zork I, the header values are `#$20DE` and `#$00CA`, respectively. This means that `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` is `$4CDE` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE` is `$2CCA`.

```

35  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <34d 36a>
      .store_z_global_vars_addr:
          LDY      #$0D
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA      GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR
          DEY
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          CLC
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
          STA      GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1

      .store_z_abbrev_table_addr:
          LDY      #$19
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA      Z_ABBREV_TABLE
          DEY
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          CLC
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
          STA      Z_ABBREV_TABLE+1

```

Uses `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR 209` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE 209`.

Next, we set `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR` to the page-aligned memory address immediately after the image, and compare its page to the last viable RAM page. If it is greater, we hit a BRK instruction since there isn't enough memory to run the game.

For Zork I, `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR` is \$7400.

For a fully-populated Apple II (64k RAM), the last viable RAM page is `#$BF`.

```

36a  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <35 36b>
      LDA    #$00
      STA    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
      LDA    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
      CLC
      ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
      STA    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
      JSR    locate_last_ram_page
      SEC
      SBC    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
      BCC    .brk

```

Uses `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR 209`, `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES 209`, and `brk 34c`.

We then store the difference as the last Z-image page in `LAST_Z_PAGE`, and the same, plus 1, in `FIRST_Z_PAGE`. We also set the next page table entry of the last page to `#$FF`.

For Zork I, `FIRST_Z_PAGE` is `#$4C`, and `LAST_Z_PAGE` is `#$4B`.

And lastly, we start the interpreter loop by executing the first instruction in z-code.

```

36b  <main 29a>+≡ (212) <36a
      TAY
      INY
      STY    FIRST_Z_PAGE
      TAY
      STY    LAST_Z_PAGE
      LDA    #$FF
      STA    (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      JMP    do_instruction

```

<die 34b>

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE 209`, `LAST_Z_PAGE 209`, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 209`, and `do_instruction 116`.

To locate the last viable RAM page, we start with `$COFF` in `SCRATCH2`.

We then decrement the high byte of `SCRATCH2`, and read from the address twice. If it reads differently, we are not yet into viable RAM, so we decrement and try again.

Otherwise, we invert the byte, write it back, and read it back. Again, if it reads differently, we decrement and try again.

Finally, we return the high byte of `SCRATCH2`.

37 *⟨Locate last RAM page 37⟩*≡ (212)
 `locate_last_ram_page:`
 SUBROUTINE

```

MOVW    #CO, SCRATCH2+1
MOVW    #FF, SCRATCH2
LDY     #00

```

```

.loop:
  DEC    SCRATCH2+1
  LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
  CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
  BNE    .loop
  EOR    #FF
  STA    (SCRATCH2),Y
  CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
  BNE    .loop
  EOR    #FF
  STA    (SCRATCH2),Y
  LDA    SCRATCH2+1
  RTS

```

Defines:

`locate_last_ram_addr`, never used.

Uses `MOVW 12b` and `SCRATCH2 209`.

Chapter 5

The Z-stack

The Z-stack is a stack of 16-bit values used by the Z-machine. It is not the same as the 6502 stack. The stack can hold values, but also holds call frames (see [Call](#)). The stack grows downwards in memory.

The stack pointer is `Z_SP`, and it points to the current top of the stack. The counter `STACK_COUNT` contains the current number of 16-bit elements on the stack.

As mentioned above, `STACK_COUNT`, is initialized to 1 and `Z_SP`, is initialized to `$03E8`.

Pushing a 16-bit value onto the stack involves placing the value at the next two free locations, low byte first, and then decrementing the stack pointer by 2. So for example, if pushing the value `#$1234` onto the stack, and `Z_SP` is `$03E8`, then `$03E7` will contain `#$34`, `$03E6` will contain `#$12`, and `Z_SP` will end up as `$03E6`. `STACK_COUNT` will also be incremented.

The `push` routine pushes the 16-byte value in `SCRATCH2` onto the stack. According to the code, if the number of elements becomes `#$B4` (180), the program will hit a `BRK` instruction.

```
38  <Push 38>≡ (212)
    push:
        SUBROUTINE

        SUBB    Z_SP, #$01
        LDY     #$00
        LDA     SCRATCH2
        STA     (Z_SP),Y
        SUBB    Z_SP, #$01
        LDA     SCRATCH2+1
```

```

    STA    (Z_SP),Y
    INC    STACK_COUNT
    LDA    STACK_COUNT
    CMP    #$B4
    BCC    .end
    JSR    brk

```

```

.end:
    RTS

```

Defines:

push, used in chunks 127, 128, 130–32, and 173b.

Uses SCRATCH2 209, STACK_COUNT 209, SUBB 17b, Z_SP 209, and brk 34c.

The pop routine pops a 16-bit value from the stack into SCRATCH2, which increments Z_SP by 2, then decrements STACK_COUNT. If STACK_COUNT ends up as zero, the stack underflows and the program will hit a BRK instruction.

39 $\langle \text{Pop 39} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

pop:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDY    #$00
    LDA    (Z_SP),Y
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    INCW   Z_SP
    LDA    (Z_SP),Y
    STA    SCRATCH2
    INCW   Z_SP
    DEC    STACK_COUNT
    BNE    .end
    JSR    brk
.end:
    RTS

```

Defines:

pop, used in chunks 125, 128, 134, 172b, 173a, and 187a.

Uses INCW 14b, SCRATCH2 209, STACK_COUNT 209, Z_SP 209, and brk 34c.

Chapter 6

Z-code

Z-code is not stored in memory in a linear fashion. Rather, it is stored in pages of 256 bytes, in the order that the Z-machine loads them. `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR` is the address in memory that the current page of Z-code is stored in.

The `Z_PC` 24-bit address is an address into z-code. So, getting the next code byte translates to retrieving the byte at $(\text{ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR}) + \text{Z_PC}$ and incrementing the low byte of `Z_PC`.

Of course, if the low byte of `Z_PC` ends up as 0, we'll need to propagate the increment to its other bytes, but also invalidate the current code page.

This is handled through the `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` flag. If it is zero, then we will need to load a page of Z-code into `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR`.

As an example, when the Z-machine starts, `Z_PC` is `#$004859`, and `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` is 0. This means that we will have to load code page `#$48`.

```
40  <Get next code byte 40>≡ (212) 41>
    get_next_code_byte:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
    BEQ    .zcode_page_invalid
    LDY    Z_PC                ; load from memory
    LDA    (ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR),Y
    INY
    STY    Z_PC
    BEQ    .invalidate_zcode_page ; next byte in next page?
    RTS

.invalidate_zcode_page:
```

```

        LDY    #$00
        STY    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        INC    Z_PC+1
        BNE    .end
        INC    Z_PC+2

.end:
        RTS

```

Defines:

get_next_code_byte, used in chunks 42, 116, 117a, 124, 125, 127, 130c, 131, 165, and 166.
 Uses ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR 209, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 209, and Z_PC 209.

As an example, on start, Z_PC is #\$004859, so we have to access code page #\$0048. Since the high byte isn't set, we know that the code page is in memory. If the high byte were set, we would have to locate that page in memory, and if it isn't there, we would have to load it from disk.

But let's suppose that Z_PC were #\$014859. We would have to access code page #\$0148. Initially, PAGE_L.TABLE and PAGE_H.TABLE are zeroed out, so find_index_of_page_table would return with carry set and the A register set to LAST_Z_PAGE (\$4B).

```

41  <Get next code byte 40>+≡ (212) <40 42>
        .zcode_page_invalid:
            LDA    Z_PC+2
            BNE    .find_pc_page_in_page_table
            LDA    Z_PC+1
            CMP    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
            BCC    .set_page_addr

        .find_pc_page_in_page_table:
            LDA    Z_PC+1
            STA    SCRATCH2
            LDA    Z_PC+2
            STA    SCRATCH2+1
            JSR    find_index_of_page_table
            STA    PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
            BCS    .not_found_in_page_table

        .set_page_first:
            JSR    set_page_first
            CLC
            LDA    PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
            ADC    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES

```

Defines:

.zcode_page_invalid, never used.
 Uses NUM_IMAGE_PAGES 209, PAGE_TABLE_INDEX 209, SCRATCH2 209, Z_PC 209,
 find_index_of_page_table 44, and set_page_first 45.

Once we've ensured that the desired Z-code page is in memory, we can add the page to the page of `Z_HEADER_ADDR` and store in `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR`. We also set the low byte of `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR` to zero since we're guaranteed to be at the top of the page. We also set `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` to true. And finally we go back to the beginning of the routine to get the next code byte.

```

42  <Get next code byte 40>+≡ (212) <41 43>
    .set_page_addr:
        CLC
        ADC     Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR+1
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR
        LDA     #$FF
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        JMP     get_next_code_byte

```

Defines:

`.set_page_addr`, never used.

Uses `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR` 209, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` 209, and `get_next_code_byte` 40.

If the page we need isn't found in the page table, we need to load it from disk, and it gets loaded into AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR plus PAGE_TABLE_INDEX pages. On a good read, we store the z-page value into the page table.

```

43  <Get next code byte 40>+≡ (212) <42
    .not_found_in_page_table:
        CMP     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        BNE     .read_from_disk
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2

    .read_from_disk:
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
        STA     SCRATCH2
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        CLC
        ADC     SCRATCH2+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     Z_PC+1
        STA     SCRATCH1
        LDA     Z_PC+2
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        JSR     read_from_sector
        BCC     .good_read
        JMP     main

    .good_read:
        LDY     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        LDA     Z_PC+1
        STA     (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
        LDA     Z_PC+2
        STA     (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
        TYA
        JMP     .set_page_first

```

Defines:

.not_found_in_page_table, never used.

Uses AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR 209, PAGE_H_TABLE 209, PAGE_L_TABLE 209, PAGE_TABLE_INDEX 209, PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2 209, Z_PC 209, good_read 228, main 29a, read_from_sector 111, and set_page_first 45.

Given a page-aligned address in SCRATCH2, this routine searches through the PAGE_L_TABLE and PAGE_H_TABLE for that address, returning the index found in A (or LAST_Z_PAGE if not found). The carry flag is clear if the page was found, otherwise it is set.

44 \langle Find index of page table 44 $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

find_index_of_page_table:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDX    FIRST_Z_PAGE
        LDY    #$00
        LDA    SCRATCH2

    .loop:
        CMP    (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
        BNE    .next
        LDA    SCRATCH2+1
        CMP    (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
        BEQ    .found
        LDA    SCRATCH2

    .next:
        INY
        DEX
        BNE    .loop
        LDA    LAST_Z_PAGE
        SEC
        RTS

    .found:
        TYA
        CLC
        RTS

```

Defines:

find_index_of_page_table, used in chunks 41 and 46.

Uses FIRST_Z_PAGE 209, LAST_Z_PAGE 209, PAGE_H_TABLE 209, PAGE_L_TABLE 209,
and SCRATCH2 209.

Setting page A first is a matter of fiddling with all the pointers in the right order. Of course, if it's already the `FIRST_Z_PAGE`, we're done.

```

45  <Set page first 45>≡ (212)
    set_page_first:
        SUBROUTINE

            CMP     FIRST_Z_PAGE
            BEQ     .end
            LDX     FIRST_Z_PAGE          ; prev_first = FIRST_Z_PAGE
            STA     FIRST_Z_PAGE          ; FIRST_Z_PAGE = A

            TAY
            LDA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; SCRATCH2L = NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE]
            STA     SCRATCH2
            TXA
            STA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE] = prev_first

            LDA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; SCRATCH2H = PREV_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE]
            STA     SCRATCH2+1
            LDA     #$FF
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE] = #$FF
            LDY     SCRATCH2+1
            LDA     SCRATCH2
            STA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[SCRATCH2H] = SCRATCH2L
            TXA
            TAY
            LDA     FIRST_Z_PAGE
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[prev_first] = FIRST_Z_PAGE
            LDA     SCRATCH2
            CMP     #$FF
            BEQ     .set_last_z_page
            TAY
            LDA     SCRATCH2+1
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[SCRATCH2L] = SCRATCH2H

        .end:
            RTS

        .set_last_z_page:
            LDA     SCRATCH2+1          ; LAST_Z_PAGE = SCRATCH2H
            STA     LAST_Z_PAGE
            RTS

```

Defines:

`set_page_first`, used in chunks 41, 43, and 46.

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE` 209, `LAST_Z_PAGE` 209, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` 209, `PREV_PAGE_TABLE` 209, and `SCRATCH2` 209.

The `get_next_code_byte2` routine is identical to `get_next_code_byte`, except that it uses a second set of Z_PC variables: `Z_PC2`, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2`, `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2`, and `PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2`.

Note that the three bytes of `Z_PC2` are not stored in memory in the same order as `Z_PC`, which is why we separate out the bytes into `Z_PC2_HH`, `Z_PC2_H`, and `Z_PC2_L`.

```

46  <Get next code byte 2 46>≡ (212)
    get_next_code_byte2:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        BEQ      .zcode_page_invalid
        LDY      Z_PC2_L
        LDA      (ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2),Y
        INY
        STY      Z_PC2_L
        BEQ      .invalidate_zcode_page
        RTS

    .invalidate_zcode_page:
        LDY      #$00
        STY      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        INC      Z_PC2_H
        BNE      .end
        INC      Z_PC2_HH

    .end:
        RTS

    .zcode_page_invalid:
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        BNE      .find_pc_page_in_page_table
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        CMP      NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        BCC      .set_page_addr

    .find_pc_page_in_page_table:
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        JSR      find_index_of_page_table
        STA      PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        BCS      .not_found_in_page_table

    .set_page_first:
        JSR      set_page_first
        CLC

```

```

        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        ADC     NUM_IMAGE_PAGES

.set_page_addr:
        CLC
        ADC     Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2+1
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2
        LDA     #$FF
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        JMP     get_next_code_byte2

.not_found_in_page_table:
        CMP     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        BNE     .read_from_disk
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID

.read_from_disk:
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
        STA     SCRATCH2
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        CLC
        ADC     SCRATCH2+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     Z_PC2_H
        STA     SCRATCH1
        LDA     Z_PC2_HH
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        JSR     read_from_sector
        BCC     .good_read
        JMP     main

.good_read:
        LDY     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        LDA     Z_PC2_H
        STA     (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
        LDA     Z_PC2_HH
        STA     (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
        TYA
        JMP     .set_page_first

```

Defines:

get_next_code_byte2, used in chunks 48a and 170a.

Uses AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR 209, NUM_IMAGE_PAGES 209, PAGE_H_TABLE 209, PAGE_L_TABLE 209, PAGE_TABLE_INDEX 209, PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2 209, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 209, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2 209, Z_PC2_H 209, Z_PC2_HH 209, Z_PC2_L 209, find_index_of_page_table 44, good_read 228, main 29a,

`read_from_sector` 111, and `set_page_first` 45.

That routine is used in `get_next_code_word`, which simply gets a 16-bit bigendian value at `Z_PC2` and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

48a $\langle \textit{Get next code word 48a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

`get_next_code_word:`

SUBROUTINE

JSR `get_next_code_byte2`

PHA

JSR `get_next_code_byte2`

STA `SCRATCH2`

PLA

STA `SCRATCH2+1`

RTS

Defines:

`get_next_code_word`, used in chunks 64 and 169b.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 209 and `get_next_code_byte2` 46.

The `load_address` routine copies `SCRATCH2` to `Z_PC2`.

48b $\langle \textit{Load address 48b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

`load_address:`

SUBROUTINE

LDA `SCRATCH2`

STA `Z_PC2_L`

LDA `SCRATCH2+1`

STA `Z_PC2_H`

LDA `#$00`

STA `Z_PC2_HH`

Defines:

`load_address`, used in chunks 141, 169b, 170a, and 189b.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 209, `Z_PC2_H` 209, `Z_PC2_HH` 209, and `Z_PC2_L` 209.

The `load_packed_address` routine multiplies `SCRATCH2` by 2 and stores the result in `Z_PC2`.

49 $\langle \text{Load packed address 49} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

`invalidate_zcode_page2:`

 SUBROUTINE

 LDA #\$00

 STA `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2`

 RTS

`load_packed_address:`

 SUBROUTINE

 LDA `SCRATCH2`

 ASL

 STA `Z_PC2_L`

 LDA `SCRATCH2+1`

 ROL

 STA `Z_PC2_H`

 LDA #\$00

 ROL

 STA `Z_PC2_HH`

 JMP `invalidate_zcode_page2`

Defines:

`invalidate_zcode_page2`, never used.

`load_packed_address`, used in chunks 68 and 190c.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 209, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2` 209, `Z_PC2_H` 209, `Z_PC2_HH` 209, and `Z_PC2_L` 209.

Chapter 7

I/O

7.1 Strings and output

7.1.1 The Apple II text screen

The `cout_string` routine stores a pointer to the ASCII string to print in `SCRATCH2`, and the number of characters to print in the `X` register. It uses the `COUT1` routine to output characters to the screen.

Apple II Monitors Peeled describes `COUT1` as writing the byte in the `A` register to the screen at cursor position `CV`, `CH`, using `INVFLG` and supporting cursor movement.

The difference between `COUT` and `COUT1` is that `COUT1` always prints to the screen, while `COUT` prints to whatever device is currently set as the output (e.g. a modem).

See also [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 61 for an explanation of these routines.

The logical-or with `#$80` sets the high bit, which causes `COUT1` to output normal characters. Without it, the characters would be in inverse text.

```
50  <Output string to console 50>≡ (212)
    cout_string:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY    #$00

    .loop:
```

```

LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
ORA    #$80
JSR    COUT1
INY
DEX
BNE    .loop
RTS

```

Defines:

 cout_string, used in chunks 57, 72, and 149.
 Uses COUT1 208 and SCRATCH2 209.

The home routine calls the ROM HOME routine, which clears the scroll window and sets the cursor to the top left corner of the window. This routine, however, also loads CURR_LINE with the top line of the window.

```

51  <Home 51>≡ (212)
    home:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR    HOME
        LDA    WNDTOP
        STA    CURR_LINE
        RTS

```

Defines:

 home, used in chunks 52 and 147.
 Uses CURR_LINE 209, HOME 208, and WNDTOP 208.

The `reset_window` routine sets the top left and bottom right of the screen scroll window to their full-screen values, sets the input prompt character to `>`, resets the inverse flag to `#$FF` (do not invert), then calls `home` to reset the cursor.

```

52  <Reset window 52>≡ (212)
    reset_window:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #1
        STA    WNDTOP
        LDA    #0
        STA    WNDLFT
        LDA    #40
        STA    WNDWDTH
        LDA    #24
        STA    WNDBTM
        LDA    #$3E    ; '>'
        STA    PROMPT
        LDA    #$FF
        STA    INVFLG
        JSR    home
        RTS

```

Defines:

`reset_window`, used in chunk 32a.

Uses `INVFLG` 208, `PROMPT` 208, `WNDBTM` 208, `WNDLFT` 208, `WNDTOP` 208, `WNDWDTH` 208, and `home` 51.

7.1.2 The text buffer

When printing to the screen, Zork breaks lines between words. To do this, we buffer characters into the `BUFF_AREA`, which starts at address `$0200`. The offset into the area to put the next character into is in `BUFF_END`.

The `dump_buffer_to_screen` routine dumps the current buffer line to the screen, and then zeros `BUFF_END`.

```

53  <Dump buffer to screen 53>≡ (212)
    dump_buffer_to_screen:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDX    #$00

    .loop:
        CPX    BUFF_END
        BEQ    .done
        LDA    BUFF_AREA,X
        JSR    COUT1
        INX
        JMP    .loop

    .done:
        LDX    #$00
        STX    BUFF_END
        RTS

```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_to_screen`, used in chunks 56 and 72.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 209, `BUFF_END` 209, and `COUT1` 208.

Zork also has the option to send all output to the printer, and the `dump_buffer_to_printer` routine is the printer version of `dump_buffer_to_screen`.

Output to the printer involves temporarily changing `CSW` (initially `COUT1`) to the printer output routine at `PRINTER_CSW`, calling `COUT` with the characters to print, then restoring `CSW`. Note that we call `COUT`, not `COUT1`.

See [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 61 for an explanation of these routines.

If the printer hasn't yet been initialized, we send the command string `ctrl-I80N`, which according to the Apple II Parallel Printer Interface Card Installation and Operation Manual, sets the printer to output 80 characters per line.

There is one part of initialization which isn't clear. It stores `#$91`, corresponding to character `Q`, into a screen memory hole at `$0779`. The purpose of doing this is not known.

See [Understanding the Apple //e](#) (Sather, 1985) figure 5.5 for details on screen holes.

See [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 82 for a possible explanation, where `$0779` is part of `SCRATCHpad` RAM for slot 1, which is typically where the printer card would be placed. Maybe writing `#$91` to `$0779` was necessary to enable command mode for certain cards.

```
54  <Dump buffer to printer 54>≡ (212)
    printer_card_initialized_flag:
        BYTE    00

    dump_buffer_to_printer:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA     CSW
        PHA
        LDA     CSW+1
        PHA
        LDA     PRINTER_CSW
        STA     CSW
        LDA     PRINTER_CSW+1
        STA     CSW+1
        LDX     #$00
        LDA     printer_card_initialized_flag
        BNE     .loop
        INC     printer_card_initialized_flag

    .printer_set_80_column_output:
        LDA     #$09      ; ctrl-I
        JSR     COUT
        LDA     #$91      ; 'Q'
```

```
    STA    $0779    ; Scratchpad RAM for slot 1.
    LDA    #$B8     ; '8'
    JSR    COUT
    LDA    #$B0     ; '0'
    JSR    COUT
    LDA    #$CE     ; 'N'
    JSR    COUT

.loop:
    CPX    BUFF_END
    BEQ    .done
    LDA    BUFF_AREA,X
    JSR    COUT
    INX
    JMP    .loop

.done:
    LDA    CSW
    STA    PRINTER_CSW
    LDA    CSW+1
    STA    PRINTER_CSW+1
    PLA
    STA    CSW+1
    PLA
    STA    CSW
    RTS
```

Defines:

 dump_buffer_to_printer, used in chunks 56 and 74.

 printer_card_initialized_flag, never used.

Uses BUFF_AREA 209, BUFF_END 209, COUT 208, CSW 208, and PRINTER_CSW 209.

Tying these two routines together is `dump_buffer_line`, which dumps the current buffer line to the screen, and optionally the printer, depending on the printer output flag stored in bit 0 of offset `#$11` in the Z-machine header. Presumably this bit is set (in the Z-code itself) when you type `SCRIPT` on the Zork command line, and unset when you type `UNSCRIPT`.

```
56  <Dump buffer line 56>≡ (212)
    dump_buffer_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY    #$11
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        AND    #$01
        BEQ    .skip_printer
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_printer

        .skip_printer:
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_screen
        RTS
```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_line`, used in chunks 58a, 72, 74, 149, 151a, and 152.
Uses `dump_buffer_to_printer` 54 and `dump_buffer_to_screen` 53.

The `dump_buffer_with_more` routine dumps the buffered line, but first, we check if we've reached the bottom of the screen by comparing `CURR_LINE >= WNDBTM`. If true, we print `[MORE]` in inverse text, wait for the user to hit a character, set `CURR_LINE` to `WNDTOP + 1`, and continue.

```

57  <Dump buffer with more 57>≡ (212) 58a>
    string_more:
        DC          "[MORE]"

dump_buffer_with_more:
    SUBROUTINE

    INC            CURR_LINE
    LDA            CURR_LINE
    CMP            WNDBTM
    BCC            .good_to_go    ; haven't reached bottom of screen yet

    STOW           string_more, SCRATCH2
    LDX            #6

    LDA            #$3F
    STA            INVFLG
    JSR            cout_string    ; print [MORE] in inverse text

    LDA            #$FF
    STA            INVFLG

    JSR            RDKEY          ; wait for keypress
    LDA            CH
    SEC
    SBC            #$06
    STA            CH              ; move cursor back 6
    JSR            CLREOL          ; and clear the line
    LDA            WNDTOP
    STA            CURR_LINE
    INC            CURR_LINE      ; start at top of screen

    .good_to_go:

```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_with_more`, used in chunks 60, 61b, 147, 149, 151, 152, 204b, and 205.
 Uses CH 208, CLREOL 208, CURR_LINE 209, INVFLG 208, RDKEY 208, SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11,
 WNDBTM 208, WNDTOP 208, and cout_string 50.

Next, we call `dump_buffer_line` to output the buffer to the screen. If we haven't yet reached the end of the line, then output a newline character to the screen.

```
58a  <Dump buffer with more 57>+≡ (212) <57 58b>
      LDA      BUFF_END
      PHA
      JSR      dump_buffer_line
      PLA
      CMP      WNDWIDTH
      BEQ      .skip_newline
      LDA      #$8D
      JSR      COUT1
```

`.skip_newline:`

Uses `BUFF_END` 209, `COUT1` 208, `WNDWIDTH` 208, and `dump_buffer_line` 56.

Next, we check if we are also outputting to the printer. If so, we output a newline to the printer as well. Note that we've already output the line to the printer in `dump_buffer_line`, so we only need to output a newline here.

```
58b  <Dump buffer with more 57>+≡ (212) <58a 59>
      LDY      #$11
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      AND      #$01
      BEQ      .reset_buffer_end

      LDA      CSW
      PHA
      LDA      CSW+1
      PHA
      LDA      PRINTER_CSW
      STA      CSW
      LDA      PRINTER_CSW+1
      STA      CSW+1

      LDA      #$8D
      JSR      COUT

      LDA      CSW
      STA      PRINTER_CSW
      LDA      CSW+1
      STA      PRINTER_CSW+1
      PLA
      STA      CSW+1
      PLA
      STA      CSW
```

`.reset_buffer_end:`

Uses `COUT` 208, `CSW` 208, and `PRINTER_CSW` 209.

The last step is to set `BUFF_END` to zero.

```
59  <Dump buffer with more 57>+≡ (212) <58b
      LDX      #$00
      JMP      buffer_char_set_buffer_end
Uses buffer_char_set.buffer_end 60.
```

The high-level routine `buffer_char` places the ASCII character in the A register into the end of the buffer.

If the character was a newline, then we tail-call to `dump_buffer_with_more` to dump the buffer to the output and return. Calling `dump_buffer_with_more` also resets `BUFF_END` to zero.

Otherwise, the character is first converted to uppercase if it is lowercase, then stored in the buffer and, if we haven't yet hit the end of the row, we increment `BUFF_END` and then return.

Control characters (those under `#$20`) are not put in the buffer, and simply ignored.

```
60  <Buffer a character 60>≡ (212) 61a>
    buffer_char:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDX     BUFF_END
        CMP     #$0D
        BNE     .not_OD
        JMP     dump_buffer_with_more

    .not_OD:
        CMP     #$20
        BCC     buffer_char_set_buffer_end
        CMP     #$60
        BCC     .store_char
        CMP     #$80
        BCS     .store_char
        SEC
        SBC     #$20                ; converts to uppercase

    .store_char:
        ORA     #$80                ; sets as normal text
        STA     BUFF_AREA,X
        CPX     WNDWIDTH
        BCS     .hit_right_limit
        INX

    buffer_char_set_buffer_end:
        STX     BUFF_END
        RTS

    .hit_right_limit:
```

Defines:

`buffer_char`, used in chunks 62b, 69a, 70c, 72, 107, 108, 148a, 150, 186b, 188b, and 189c.

`buffer_char_set_buffer_end`, used in chunk 59.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 209, `BUFF_END` 209, `WNDWIDTH` 208, and `dump_buffer_with_more` 57.

If we have hit the end of a row, we're going to put the word we just wrote onto the next line.

To do that, we search for the position of the last space in the buffer, or if there wasn't any space, we just use the position of the end of the row.

61a \langle Buffer a character 60 $\rangle + \equiv$ (212) \langle 60 61b \rangle
 LDA #\$A0 ; normal space

```
.loop:
    CMP     BUFF_AREA,X
    BEQ     .endloop
    DEX
    BNE     .loop
    LDX     WNDWDTH
```

```
.endloop:
```

Uses BUFF_AREA 209 and WNDWDTH 208.

Now that we've found the position to break the line at, we dump the buffer up until that position using `dump_buffer_with_more`, which also resets `BUFF_END` to zero.

61b \langle Buffer a character 60 $\rangle + \equiv$ (212) \langle 61a 62a \rangle
 STX BUFF_LINE_LEN
 STX BUFF_END
 JSR dump_buffer_with_more

Uses BUFF_END 209, BUFF_LINE_LEN 209, and dump_buffer_with_more 57.

Next, we increment `BUFF_LINE_LEN` to skip past the space. If we're past the window width though, we take the last character we added, move it to the end of the buffer (which should be the beginning of the buffer), increment `BUFF_END`, then we increment `BUFF_LINE_LEN`.

```

62a  <Buffer a character 60>+≡ (212) <61b
      .increment_length:
          INC      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          LDX      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          CPX      WNDWDTH
          BCC      .move_last_char
          BEQ      .move_last_char
          RTS

      .move_last_char:
          LDA      BUFF_AREA,X
          LDX      BUFF_END
          STA      BUFF_AREA,X
          INC      BUFF_END
          LDX      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          JMP      .increment_length

```

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 209, `BUFF_END` 209, `BUFF_LINE_LEN` 209, and `WNDWDTH` 208.

We can print an ASCII string with the `print_ascii_string` routine. It takes the length of the string in the X register, and the address of the string in `SCRATCH2`. It calls `buffer_char` to buffer each character in the string.

```

62b  <Print ASCII string 62b>≡ (212)
      print_ascii_string:
          SUBROUTINE

          STX      SCRATCH3
          LDY      #$00
          STY      SCRATCH3+1

      .loop:
          LDY      SCRATCH3+1
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          JSR      buffer_char
          INC      SCRATCH3+1
          DEC      SCRATCH3
          BNE      .loop
          RTS

```

Defines:

`print_ascii_string`, used in chunks 147, 149, 151a, 152, and 205.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 209, `SCRATCH3` 209, and `buffer_char` 60.

7.1.3 Z-coded strings

For how strings and characters are encoded, see [section 3 of the Z-machine standard](#).

The alphabet shifts are stored in `SHIFT_ALPHABET` for a one-character shift, and `SHIFT_LOCK_ALPHABET` for a locked shift. The routine `get_alphabet` gets the alphabet to use, accounting for shifts.

```
63  <Get alphabet 63>≡ (212)
    get_alphabet:
        LDA     SHIFT_ALPHABET
        BPL     .remove_shift
        LDA     LOCKED_ALPHABET
        RTS

    .remove_shift:
        LDY     #$FF
        STY     SHIFT_ALPHABET
        RTS
```

Defines:

`get_alphabet`, used in chunks 66a and 67.

Uses `LOCKED_ALPHABET 209` and `SHIFT_ALPHABET 209`.

Since z-characters are encoded three at a time in two consecutive bytes in z-code, there's a state machine which determines where we are in the decompression. The state is stored in `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE`.

If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 0, then we need to load the next two bytes from z-code and extract the first character. If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 1, then we need to extract the second character. If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 2, then we need to extract the third character. And finally if `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is -1, then we've reached the end of the string.

The z-character is returned in the A register. Furthermore, the carry is set when requesting the next character, but we've already reached the end of the string. Otherwise the carry is cleared.

```

64  <Get next zchar 64>≡ (212)
    get_next_zchar:
        LDA     ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        BPL     .check_for_char_1
        SEC
        RTS

    .check_for_char_1:
        BNE     .check_for_char_2
        INC     ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        JSR     get_next_code_word
        LDA     SCRATCH2
        STA     ZCHARS_L
        LDA     SCRATCH2+1
        STA     ZCHARS_H
        LDA     ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LSR
        AND     #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

    .check_for_char_2:
        SEC
        SBC     #$01
        BNE     .check_for_last
        LDA     #$02
        STA     ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        LDA     ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LDA     ZCHARS_L
        ROR
        TAY
        LDA     ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LSR

```

```

        TYA
        ROR
        LSR
        LSR
        LSR
        AND    #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

.check_for_last:
        LDA    #$00
        STA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        LDA    ZCHARS_H
        BPL    .get_char_3
        LDA    #$FF
        STA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE

.get_char_3:
        LDA    ZCHARS_L
        AND    #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_next_zchar`, used in chunks 66a, 68, and 71a.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 209, `ZCHARS_H` 209, `ZCHARS_L` 209, `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` 209,
and `get_next_code_word` 48a.

The `print_zstring` routine prints the z-encoded string at `Z_PC2` to the screen. It uses `get_next_zchar` to get the next z-character, and handles alphabet shifts.

We first initialize the shift state.

```

65  <Print zstring 65>≡ (212) 66a>
    print_zstring:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #$00
        STA    LOCKED_ALPHABET
        STA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        STOB    #$FF, SHIFT_ALPHABET

```

Defines:

`print_zstring`, used in chunks 68, 71b, 141, and 163b.

Uses `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 209, `SHIFT_ALPHABET` 209, `STOB` 12b, and `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` 209.

Next, we loop through the z-string, getting each z-character. We have to handle special z-characters separately.

z-character 0 is always a space.

z-character 1 means to look at the next z-character and use it as an index into the abbreviation table, printing that string.

z-characters 2 and 3 shifts the alphabet forwards (A0 to A1 to A2 to A0) and backwards (A0 to A2 to A1 to A0) respectively.

z-characters 4 and 5 shift-locks the alphabet.

All other characters will get translated to the ASCII character using the current alphabet.

```

66a  <Print zstring 65>+≡ (212) <65
      .loop:
          JSR      get_next_zchar
          BCC      .not_end
          RTS

      .not_end:
          STA      SCRATCH3
          BEQ      .space          ; z-char 0?
          CMP      #$01
          BEQ      .abbreviation   ; z-char 1?
          CMP      #$04
          BCC      .shift_alphabet  ; z-char 2 or 3?
          CMP      #$06
          BCC      .shift_lock_alphabet ; z-char 4 or 5?
          JSR      get_alphabet

          ; fall through to print the z-character
          <Print the zchar 69a>
Uses SCRATCH3 209, get_alphabet 63, and get_next_zchar 64.

```

```

66b  <Printing a space 66b>≡ (212)
      .space:
          LDA      #$20
          JMP      .printchar
Defines:
      .space, never used.

```

67 \langle *Shifting alphabets* 67 $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
.shift_alphabet:
    JSR     get_alphabet
    CLC
    ADC     #$02
    ADC     SCRATCH3
    JSR     A_mod_3
    STA     SHIFT_ALPHABET
    JMP     .loop

.shift_lock_alphabet:
    JSR     get_alphabet
    CLC
    ADC     SCRATCH3
    JSR     A_mod_3
    STA     LOCKED_ALPHABET
    JMP     .loop
```

Defines:

.shift_alphabet, never used.

.shift_lock_alphabet, never used.

Uses A_mod_3 106, LOCKED_ALPHABET 209, SCRATCH3 209, SHIFT_ALPHABET 209,
and get_alphabet 63.

When printing an abbreviation, we multiply the z-character by 2 to get an address index into `Z_ABBREV_TABLE`. The address from the table is then stored in `SCRATCH2`, and we recurse into `print_zstring` to print the abbreviation. This involves saving and restoring the current decompress state.

```

68  <Printing an abbreviation 68>≡ (212)
    .abbreviation:
        JSR      get_next_zchar
        ASL
        ADC      #$01
        TAY
        LDA      (Z_ABBREV_TABLE),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2
        DEY
        LDA      (Z_ABBREV_TABLE),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2+1

        ; Save the decompress state

        LDA      LOCKED_ALPHABET
        PHA
        LDA      ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        PHA
        LDA      ZCHARS_L
        PHA
        LDA      ZCHARS_H
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_L
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        PHA

        JSR      load_packed_address
        JSR      print_zstring

        ; Restore the decompress state

        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_HH
        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_H
        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_L
        LDA      #$00
        STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        PLA
        STA      ZCHARS_H
        PLA

```

```

        STA      ZCHARS_L
        PLA
        STA      ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        PLA
        STA      LOCKED_ALPHABET
        LDA      #$FF          ; Resets any temporary shift
        STA      SHIFT_ALPHABET
        JMP      .loop

```

Defines:

.abbreviation, never used.

Uses LOCKED_ALPHABET 209, SCRATCH2 209, SHIFT_ALPHABET 209, ZCHARS_H 209, ZCHARS_L 209, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2 209, ZDECOMPRESS_STATE 209, Z_ABBREV_TABLE 209, Z_PC2_H 209, Z_PC2_HH 209, Z_PC2_L 209, get_next_zchar 64, load_packed_address 49, and print_zstring 65.

If we are on alphabet 0, then we print the ASCII character directly by adding #\$5B. Remember that we are handling 26 z-characters 6-31, so the ASCII characters will be a-z.

69a $\langle \textit{Print the zchar 69a} \rangle \equiv$ (66a) 69b \triangleright

```

        ORA      #$00
        BNE      .check_for_alphabet_A1
        LDA      #$5B

```

.add_ascii_offset:

```

        CLC
        ADC      SCRATCH3

```

.printchar:

```

        JSR      buffer_char
        JMP      .loop

```

Uses SCRATCH3 209 and buffer_char 60.

Alphabet 1 handles uppercase characters A-Z, so we add #\$3B to the z-char.

69b $\langle \textit{Print the zchar 69a} \rangle + \equiv$ (66a) $\langle 69a \ 70b \rangle$

```

        .check_for_alphabet_A1:
        CMP      #$01
        BNE      .map_ascii_for_A2
        LDA      #$3B
        JMP      .add_ascii_offset

```

Defines:

.check_for_alphabet_A1, never used.

Alphabet 2 is more complicated because it doesn't map consecutively onto ASCII characters.

z-character 6 in alphabet 2 means that the two subsequent z-characters specify a ten-bit ZSCII character code: the next z-character gives the top 5 bits and the one after the bottom 5. However, in this version of the interpreter, only 8 bits are kept, and these are simply ASCII values.

z-character 7 causes a CRLF to be output.

Otherwise, we map the z-character to the ASCII character using the `a2_table` table.

```
70a  <A2 table 70a>≡ (212)
      a2_table:
          DC      "0123456789.,! ?_#"
          DC      ' '
          DC      "' /\-: ()"
```

Defines:

`a2_table`, used in chunks 70b and 91b.

```
70b  <Print the zchar 69a>+≡ (66a) <69b
      .map_ascii_for_A2:
          LDA      SCRATCH3
          SEC
          SBC      #$07
          BCC      .z10bits
          BEQ      .crlf
          TAY
          DEY
          LDA      a2_table,Y
          JMP      .printchar
```

Defines:

`.map_ascii_for_A2`, never used.

Uses `SCRATCH3` 209 and `a2_table` 70a.

```
70c  <Printing a CRLF 70c>≡ (212)
      .crlf:
          LDA      #$0D
          JSR      buffer_char
          LDA      #$0A
          JMP      .printchar
```

Defines:

`.crlf`, never used.

Uses `buffer_char` 60.

71a *⟨Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 71a⟩*≡ (212)

```
.z10bits:
    JSR    get_next_zchar
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    PHA
    JSR    get_next_zchar
    STA    SCRATCH3
    PLA
    ORA    SCRATCH3
    JMP    .printchar
```

Defines:

.z10bits, never used.

Uses SCRATCH3 209 and get_next_zchar 64.

print_string_literal is a high-level routine that prints a string literal to the screen, where the string literal is in z-code at the current Z_PC.

71b *⟨Printing a string literal 71b⟩*≡ (212)

```
print_string_literal:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    Z_PC
    STA    Z_PC2_L
    LDA    Z_PC+1
    STA    Z_PC2_H
    LDA    Z_PC+2
    STA    Z_PC2_HH
    LDA    #$00
    STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
    JSR    print_zstring
    LDA    Z_PC2_L
    STA    Z_PC
    LDA    Z_PC2_H
    STA    Z_PC+1
    LDA    Z_PC2_HH
    STA    Z_PC+2
    LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
    STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
    LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2
    STA    ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR
    LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2+1
    STA    ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR+1
    RTS
```

Uses ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR 209, ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2 209, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 209, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2 209, Z_PC 209, Z_PC2_H 209, Z_PC2_HH 209, Z_PC2_L 209, and print_zstring 65.

The status line

Printing the status line involves saving the current cursor location, moving the cursor to the top left of the screen, setting inverse text, printing the current room name at column 0, printing the score at column 25, resetting inverse text, and then restoring the cursor location.

```

72  <Print status line 72>≡ (212)
    sScore:
        DC      "SCORE:"

    print_status_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      dump_buffer_line
        LDA      CH
        PHA
        LDA      CV
        PHA
        LDA      #$00
        STA      CH
        STA      CV
        JSR      VTAB
        LDA      #$3F
        STA      INVFLG
        JSR      CLREOL

        LDA      #VAR_CURR_ROOM
        JSR      var_get
        JSR      print_obj_in_A
        JSR      dump_buffer_to_screen

        LDA      #25
        STA      CH
        LDA      #<sScore
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      #>sScore
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        LDX      #$06
        JSR      cout_string

        INC      CH
        LDA      #VAR_SCORE
        JSR      var_get
        JSR      print_number

        LDA      #' /
        JSR      buffer_char

        LDA      #VAR_MAX_SCORE

```

```
JSR    var_get
JSR    print_number
JSR    dump_buffer_to_screen

LDA    #$FF
STA    INVFLG
PLA
STA    CV
PLA
STA    CH
JSR    VTAB
RTS
```

Defines:

 print_status_line, used in chunk 76.

 sScore, never used.

Uses CH 208, CLREQ 208, CV 208, INVFLG 208, SCRATCH2 209, VAR_CURR_ROOM 211b,
VAR_MAX_SCORE 211b, VAR_SCORE 211b, VTAB 208, buffer_char 60, cout_string 50,
dump_buffer_line 56, dump_buffer_to_screen 53, print_number 107, print_obj_in_A 141,
and var_get 126.

7.1.4 Input

The `read_line` routine dumps whatever is in the output buffer to the output, then reads a line of input from the keyboard, storing it in the `BUFF_AREA` buffer. The buffer is terminated with a newline character.

The routine then checks if the transcript flag is set in the header, and if so, it dumps the buffer to the printer. The buffer is then truncated to the maximum number of characters allowed.

The routine then converts the characters to lowercase, and returns.

The A register will contain the number of characters in the buffer.

```

74  <Read line 74>≡ (212)
    read_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR    dump_buffer_line
        LDA    WNDTOP
        STA    CURR_LINE
        JSR    GETLN1
        INC    CURR_LINE
        LDA    #$8D                ; newline
        STA    BUFF_AREA,X
        INX                      ; X = num of chars in input
        TXA
        PHA                      ; save X
        LDY    #HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET+1
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        AND    #$01                ; Mask for transcript on
        BEQ    .continue
        TXA
        STA    BUFF_END
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_printer
        LDA    #$00
        STA    BUFF_END

    .continue
        PLA                      ; restore num of chars in input
        LDY    #$00                ; truncate to max num of chars
        CMP    (OPERANDO),Y
        BCC    .continue2
        LDA    (OPERANDO),Y

    .continue2:
        PHA                      ; save num of chars
        BEQ    .end
        TAX

```

```
.loop:
    LDA    BUFF_AREA,Y    ; convert A-Z to lowercase
    AND    #$7F
    CMP    #$41
    BCC    .continue3
    CMP    #$5B
    BCS    .continue3
    ORA    #$20

.continue3:
    INY
    STA    (OPERANDO),Y
    CMP    #$0D
    BEQ    .end
    DEX
    BNE    .loop

.end:
    PLA                                ; restore num of chars
    RTS
```

Defines:

read_line, used in chunk 76.

Uses **BUFF_AREA** 209, **BUFF_END** 209, **CURR_LINE** 209, **GETLN1** 208, **HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET** 211a,
OPERANDO 209, **WNDTOP** 208, **dump_buffer_line** 56, and **dump_buffer_to_printer** 54.

7.1.5 Lexical parsing

After reading a line, the Z-machine needs to parse it into words and then look up those words in the dictionary. The `sread` instruction combines `read_line` with parsing.

`sread` redisplay the status line, then reads characters from the keyboard until a newline is entered. The characters are stored in the buffer at the z-address in `OPERANDO`, and parsed into the buffer at the z-address in `OPERAND1`.

Prior to this instruction, the first byte in the text buffer must contain the maximum number of characters to accept as input, minus 1.

After the line is read, the line is split into words (separated by the separators space, period, comma, question mark, carriage return, newline, tab, or formfeed), and each word is looked up in the dictionary.

The number of words parsed is written in byte 1 of the parse buffer, and then follows the tokens.

Each token is 4 bytes. The first two bytes are the address of the word in the dictionary (or 0 if not found), followed by the length of the word, followed by the index into the buffer where the word starts.

```

76  <Instruction sread 76>≡ (212) 77a>
    instr_sread:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      print_status_line
        ADDW     OPERANDO, Z_HEADER_ADDR, OPERANDO ; text buffer
        ADDW     OPERAND1, Z_HEADER_ADDR, OPERAND1 ; parse buffer
        JSR      read_line ; SCRATCH3H = read_line() (input_count)
        STA      SCRATCH3+1
        LDA      #$00 ; SCRATCH3L = 0 (char count)
        STA      SCRATCH3
        LDY      #$01
        LDA      #$00 ; store 0 in the parse buffer + 1.
        STA      (OPERAND1),Y
        LDA      #$02
        STA      TOKEN_IDX
        LDA      #$01
        STA      INPUT_PTR

```

Defines:

`instr_sread`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `ADDW 16c`, `OPERANDO 209`, `OPERAND1 209`, `SCRATCH3 209`, `print_status_line 72`, and `read_line 74`.

Loop:

We check the next two bytes in the parse buffer, and if they are the same, we are done.

```
77a  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <76 77b>
      .loop_word:
          LDY    #$00          ; if parsebuf[0] == parsebuf[1] do_instruction
          LDA    (OPERAND1),Y
          INY
          CMP    (OPERAND1),Y
          BNE    .not_end1
          JMP    do_instruction
```

Uses OPERAND1 209 and do_instruction 116.

Also, if the char count and input buffer len are zero, we are done.

```
77b  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <77a 77c>
      .not_end1:
          LDA    SCRATCH3+1    ; if input_count == char_count == 0 do_instruction
          ORA    SCRATCH3
          BNE    .not_end2
          JMP    do_instruction
```

Uses SCRATCH3 209 and do_instruction 116.

If the char count isn't yet 6, then we need more chars.

```
77c  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <77b 78a>
      .not_end2:
          LDA    SCRATCH3      ; if char_count != 6 .not_min_compress_size
          CMP    #$06
          BNE    .not_min_compress_size
          JSR    skip_separators
```

Uses SCRATCH3 209 and skip_separators 82.

If the char count is 0, then we can initialize the 6-byte area in ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 with zero.

```

78a  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <77c 78b>
      .not_min_compress_size:
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          BNE    .not_separator
          LDY    #$06
          LDX    #$00

      .clear:
          LDA    #$00
          STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
          INX
          DEY
          BNE    .clear

```

Uses SCRATCH3 209 and ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 209.

Next we set up the token. Byte 3 in a token is the index into the text buffer where the word starts (INPUT_PTR). We then check if the character pointed to is a dictionary separator (which needs to be treated as a word) or a standard separator (which needs to be skipped over). And if the character is a standard separator, we increment the input pointer and decrement the input count and loop back.

```

78b  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <78a 79a>
      LDA    INPUT_PTR          ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX+3] = INPUT_PTR
      LDY    TOKEN_IDX
      INY
      INY
      INY
      STA    (OPERAND1),Y
      LDY    INPUT_PTR          ; is_dict_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
      LDA    (OPERAND0),Y
      JSR    is_dict_separator
      BCS    .is_dict_separator
      LDY    INPUT_PTR          ; is_std_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
      LDA    (OPERAND0),Y
      JSR    is_std_separator
      BCC    .not_separator
      INC    INPUT_PTR          ; ++INPUT_PTR
      DEC    SCRATCH3+1         ; --input_count
      JMP    .loop_word

```

Uses OPERAND0 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH3 209, is_dict_separator 83, and is_std_separator 83.

If `char_count` is zero, we have run out of characters, so we need to search through the dictionary with whatever we've collected in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer.

We also check if the character is a separator, and if so, we again search through the dictionary with whatever we've collected in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer.

Otherwise, we can store the character in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer, increment the char count and input pointer and decrement the input count. Then loop back.

```

79a  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <78b 79b>
      .not_separator:
      LDA      SCRATCH3+1
      BEQ      .search
      LDY      INPUT_PTR          ; is_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
      LDA      (OPERANDO),Y
      JSR      is_separator
      BCS      .search
      LDY      INPUT_PTR          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH1[char_count] = textbuf[INPUT_PTR]
      LDA      (OPERANDO),Y
      LDX      SCRATCH3
      STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
      DEC      SCRATCH3+1          ; --input_count
      INC      SCRATCH3            ; ++char_count
      INC      INPUT_PTR           ; ++INPUT_PTR
      JMP      .loop_word

```

Uses OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH3 209, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 209, and is_separator 83.

If it's a dictionary separator, we store the character in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer, increment the char count and input pointer and decrement the input count. Then we fall through to search.

```

79b  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <79a 80>
      .is_dict_separator:
      STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH1
      INC      SCRATCH3
      DEC      SCRATCH3+1
      INC      INPUT_PTR

```

Uses SCRATCH3 209, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 209, and is_dict_separator 83.

To begin, if we haven't collected any characters, then just go back and loop again.

Next, we store the number of characters in the token into the current token at byte 2. Although we will only compare the first 6 characters, we store the number of input characters in the token.

```

80  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <79b 81>
    .search:
        LDA    SCRATCH3
        BEQ    .loop_word
        LDA    SCRATCH3+1    ; Save input_count
        PHA
        LDY    TOKEN_IDX    ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX+2] = char_count
        INY
        INY
        LDA    SCRATCH3
        STA    (OPERAND1),Y

```

Uses OPERAND1 209 and SCRATCH3 209.

We then convert these characters into z-characters, which we then search through the dictionary for. We store the z-address of the found token (or zero if not found) into the token, and then loop back for the next word.

```

81  <Instruction sread 76>+≡ (212) <80
      JSR      ascii_to_zchar
      JSR      match_dictionary_word
      LDY      TOKEN_IDX          ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX] = entry_addr
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y
      INY
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y

      INY
      INY
      INY
      STY      TOKEN_IDX

      LDY      #$01              ; ++parsebuf[1]
      LDA      (OPERAND1),Y
      CLC
      ADC      #$01
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y

      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH3+1
      LDA      #$00
      STA      SCRATCH3
      JMP      .loop_word

```

Uses OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH3 209, ascii_to_zchar 84,
and match_dictionary_word 94.

Separators

82 $\langle \textit{Skip separators 82} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
skip_separators:
  SUBROUTINE

      LDA      SCRATCH3+1
      BNE      .not_end
      RTS

.not_end:
      LDY      INPUT_PTR
      LDA      (OPERANDO),Y
      JSR      is_separator
      BCC      .not_separator
      RTS

.not_separator:
      INC      INPUT_PTR
      DEC      SCRATCH3+1
      INC      SCRATCH3
      JMP      skip_separators
```

Defines:

skip_separators, used in chunk 77c.

Uses OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH3 209, and is_separator 83.

83 \langle Separator checks 83 $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

SEPARATORS_TABLE:
    DC      #$20, #$2E, #$2C, #$3F, #$0D, #$0A, #$09, #$0C

is_separator:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR      is_dict_separator
    BCC      is_std_separator
    RTS

is_std_separator:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDY      #$00
    LDX      #$08

.loop:
    CMP      SEPARATORS_TABLE,Y
    BEQ      separator_found
    INY
    DEX
    BNE      .loop

separator_not_found:
    CLC
    RTS

separator_found:
    SEC
    RTS

is_dict_separator:
    SUBROUTINE

    PHA
    JSR      get_dictionary_addr
    LDY      #$00
    LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
    TAX
    PLA

.loop:
    BEQ      separator_not_found
    INY
    CMP      (SCRATCH2),Y
    BEQ      separator_found
    DEX
    JMP      .loop

```

Defines:

SEPARATORS_TABLE, never used.
 is_dict_separator, used in chunks 78b and 79b.
 is_separator, used in chunks 79a and 82.
 is_std_separator, used in chunk 78b.
 separator_found, never used.
 separator_not_found, never used.
 Uses SCRATCH2 209 and get_dictionary_addr 93.

ASCII to Z-chars

The `ascii_to_zchar` routine converts the ASCII characters in the input buffer to z-characters.

We first set the LOCKED_ALPHABET shift to alphabet 0, and then clear the ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 buffer with 05 (pad) zchars.

84 $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar 84} \rangle \equiv$ (212) 85a >

```

ascii_to_zchar:
  SUBROUTINE

      LDA    #$00
      STA    LOCKED_ALPHABET
      LDX    #$00
      LDY    #$06

  .clear:
      LDA    #$05
      STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
      INX
      DEY
      BNE    .clear

      LDA    #$06
      STA    SCRATCH3+1      ; nchars = 6
      LDA    #$00
      STA    SCRATCH1        ; dest_index = 0
      STA    SCRATCH2        ; index = 0

```

Defines:

ascii_to_zchar, used in chunk 81.
 Uses LOCKED_ALPHABET 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209,
 and ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 209.

Next we loop over the input buffer, converting each character in ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 to a z-character. If the character is zero, we store a pad zchar.

```

85a  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <84 85b>
      .loop:
        LDX      SCRATCH2          ; c = ZCHAR_SCRATCH1[index++]
        INC      SCRATCH2
        LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
        STA      SCRATCH3
        BNE      .continue
        LDA      #$05
        JMP      .store_zchar

```

Uses SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209, and ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 209.

We first check to see which alphabet the character is in. If the alphabet is the same as the alphabet we're currently locked into, then we go to .same_alphabet because we don't need to shift the alphabet.

```

85b  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <85a 86b>
      .continue:
        LDA      SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
        PHA
        LDA      SCRATCH3          ; alphabet = get_alphabet_for_char(c)
        JSR      get_alphabet_for_char
        STA      SCRATCH1
        CMP      LOCKED_ALPHABET
        BEQ      .same_alphabet

```

Uses LOCKED_ALPHABET 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH3 209, and get_alphabet_for_char 86a.

86a $\langle \text{Get alphabet for char 86a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

get_alphabet_for_char:
    SUBROUTINE

    CMP    #$61
    BCC    .check_upper
    CMP    #$7B
    BCS    .check_upper
    LDA    #$00
    RTS

.check_upper:
    CMP    #$41
    BCC    .check_nonletter
    CMP    #$5B
    BCS    .check_nonletter
    LDA    #$01
    RTS

.check_nonletter:
    ORA    #$00
    BEQ    .return
    BMI    .return
    LDA    #$02

.return:
    RTS

```

Defines:

get_alphabet_for_char, used in chunks 85b, 86b, and 90a.

Otherwise we check the next character to see if it's in the same alphabet as the current character. If they're different, then we should shift the alphabet, not lock it.

86b $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar 84} \rangle + \equiv$ (212) $\langle 85b \ 87a \rangle$

```

LDX    SCRATCH2
LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
JSR    get_alphabet_for_char
CMP    SCRATCH1
BNE    .shift_alphabet

```

Uses SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 209, and get_alphabet_for_char 86a.

We then determine which direction to shift lock the alphabet to, store the shifting character into `SCRATCH1+1`, and set the locked alphabet to the new alphabet.

```

87a  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <86b 87b>
      SEC                      ; shift_char = shift lock char (4 or 5)
      SBC    LOCKED_ALPHABET
      CLC
      ADC    #$03
      JSR    A_mod_3
      CLC
      ADC    #$03
      STA    SCRATCH1+1
      MOVB   SCRATCH1, LOCKED_ALPHABET ; LOCKED_ALPHABET = alphabet

```

Uses `A_mod_3` 106, `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 209, `MOVB` 12b, and `SCRATCH1` 209.

Then we store the shift lock character into the destination buffer.

```

87b  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <87a 87c>
      PLA                      ; restore dest_index
      STA    SCRATCH1
      LDA    SCRATCH1+1        ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = shift_char
      LDX    SCRATCH1
      STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
      INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 209 and `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 209.

If we've run out of room in the destination buffer, then we simply go to compress the destination buffer and return. Otherwise we will add the character to the destination buffer by going to `.same_alphabet`.

```

87c  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <87b 89>
      DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
      BNE    .add_shifted_char
      JMP    z_compress

.add_shifted_char:
      LDA    SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
      PHA
      JMP    .same_alphabet

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH3` 209, and `z_compress` 88.

The `z_compress` routine takes the 6 z-characters in `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` and compresses them into 4 bytes.

88 $\langle Z \text{ compress } 88 \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `z_compress:`
 SUBROUTINE

```

LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
ASL
ASL
ASL
ASL
ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
ASL
ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
LDX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
STX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
ORA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+4
ASL
ASL
ASL
ASL
ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
ASL
ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
LDX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
STX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
ORA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+5
STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
ORA      #$80
STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
RTS

```

Defines:

`z_compress`, used in chunks 87c, 89, 90b, and 92.

Uses `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 209.

To temporarily shift the alphabet, we determine which character we need to use to shift it out of the current alphabet (`LOCKED_ALPHABET`), and put it in the destination buffer. Then, if we've run out of characters in the destination buffer, we simply go to compress the destination buffer and return.

```

89  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <87c 90a>
    .shift_alphabet:
        LDA    SCRATCH1          ; shift_char = shift char (2 or 3)
        SEC
        SBC    LOCKED_ALPHABET
        CLC
        ADC    #$03
        JSR    A_mod_3
        TAX
        INX
        PLA
        STA    SCRATCH1          ; restore dest_index
        TXA          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = shift_char
        LDX    SCRATCH1
        STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
        INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index
        DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
        BNE    .save_dest_index_and_same_alphabet

    stretchy_z_compress:
        JMP    z_compress

```

Defines:

`stretchy_z_compress`, never used.

Uses `A_mod_3` 106, `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 209, `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH3` 209, `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 209, and `z_compress` 88.

If the character to save is lowercase, we can simply subtract `#$5B` such that 'a' = 6, and so on.

```

90a  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <89 90b>
      .save_dest_index_and_same_alphabet:
          LDA    SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
          PHA

      .same_alphabet:
          PLA
          STA    SCRATCH1          ; restore dest_index
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          JSR    get_alphabet_for_char
          SEC
          SBC    #$01              ; alphabet_minus_1 = case(c) - 1
          BPL    .not_lowercase
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          SEC
          SBC    #$5B              ; c -= 'a'-6

```

Uses SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH3 209, and get_alphabet_for_char 86a.

Then we store the character in the destination buffer, and move on to the next character, unless the destination buffer is full, in which case we compress and return.

```

90b  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <90a 90c>
      .store_zchar:
          LDX    SCRATCH1          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = c
          STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
          INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index
          DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
          BEQ    .dest_full
          JMP    .loop

      .dest_full:
          JMP    z_compress

```

Uses SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH3 209, ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 209, and z_compress 88.

If the character was upper case, then we can subtract `#$3B` such that 'A' = 6, and so on, and then store the character in the same way.

```

90c  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <90b 91a>
      .not_lowercase:
          BNE    .not_alphabetic
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          SEC
          SBC    #$3B              ; c -= 'A'-6
          JMP    .store_zchar

```

Uses SCRATCH3 209.

Now if the character isn't upper or lower case, then it's a non-alphabetic character. We first search in the non-alphabetic table, and if found, we can store that character and continue.

91a $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar } 84 \rangle + \equiv$ (212) $\langle 90c \ 92 \rangle$
`.not_alphabetic:`
`LDA SCRATCH3`
`JSR search_nonalpha_table`
`BNE .store_zchar`
 Uses SCRATCH3 209 and search_nonalpha_table 91b.

91b $\langle \text{Search nonalpha table } 91b \rangle \equiv$ (212)
`search_nonalpha_table:`
`SUBROUTINE`

`LDX #$24`

`.loop:`
`CMP a2_table,X`
`BEQ .found`
`DEX`
`BPL .loop`
`LDY #$00`
`RTS`

`.found:`
`TXA`
`CLC`
`ADC #$08`
`RTS`

Defines:

`search_nonalpha_table`, used in chunk 91a.

Uses a2_table 70a.

If, however, the character is simply not representable in the z-characters, then we store a z-char newline (6), and, if there's still room in the destination buffer, we store the high 3 bits of the unrepresentable character and store it in the destination buffer, and, if there's still room, we take the low 5 bits and store that in the destination buffer.

This works because the newline character can never be a part of the input, so it serves here as an escaping character.

```

92  <ASCII to Zchar 84>+≡ (212) <91a
    LDA    #$06                ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = 6
    LDX    SCRATCH1
    STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
    INC    SCRATCH1            ; ++dest_index
    DEC    SCRATCH3+1          ; --nchars
    BEQ    z_compress

    LDA    SCRATCH3            ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = c >> 5
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    AND    #$03
    LDX    SCRATCH1
    STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
    INC    SCRATCH1            ; ++dest_index
    DEC    SCRATCH3+1          ; --nchars
    BEQ    z_compress

    LDA    SCRATCH3            ; c &= 0x1F
    AND    #$1F
    JMP    .store_zchar

```

Uses SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH3 209, ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 209, and z_compress 88.

Searching the dictionary

The address of the dictionary is stored in the header, and the `get_dictionary_addr` routine gets the absolute address of the dictionary and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

```
93  <Get dictionary address 93>≡ (212)
    get_dictionary_addr:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY      #HEADER_DICT_OFFSET
        LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        INY
        LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2
        ADDW     SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
        RTS
```

Defines:

`get_dictionary_addr`, used in chunks 83 and 94.

Uses `ADDW 16c`, `HEADER_DICT_OFFSET 211a`, and `SCRATCH2 209`.

The `match_dictionary_word` routines searches for a word in the dictionary, returning in `SCRATCH1` the z-address of the matching dictionary entry, or zero if not found.

```

94  <Match dictionary word 94>≡ (212) 95a>
    match_dictionary_word:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_dictionary_addr
        LDY      #$00                ; number of dict separators
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        TAY
        INY                        ; skip past and get entry length
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        ASL
        ASL                        ; search_size = entry length x 16
        ASL
        ASL
        STA      SCRATCH3
        INY                        ; entry_index = num dict entries
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        STA      SCRATCH1+1
        INY
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        STA      SCRATCH1
        INY
        TYA
        ADDA     SCRATCH2            ; entry_addr = start of dictionary entries
        LDY      #$00
        JMP      .try_match

```

Defines:

`match_dictionary_word`, used in chunk 81.

Uses `ADDA 15a`, `SCRATCH1 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`, `SCRATCH3 209`, and `get_dictionary_addr 93`.

Since the dictionary is stored in lexicographic order, if we ever find a word that is greater than the word we are looking for, or we reach the end of the dictionary, then we can stop searching.

Instead of searching incrementally, we actually search in steps of 16 entries. When we've located the chunk of entries that our word should be in, we then search through the 16 entries to find the word, or fail.

```

95a  <Match dictionary word 94>+≡ (212) <94 95b>
      .loop:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          CMP      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
          BCS      .possible

      .try_match:
          ADDB2    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3      ; entry_addr += search_size
          SEC                                ; entry_index -= 16
          LDA      SCRATCH1
          SBC      #$10
          STA      SCRATCH1
          BCS      .loop
          DEC      SCRATCH1+1
          BPL      .loop

```

Uses ADDB2 16b, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209, and ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 209.

```

95b  <Match dictionary word 94>+≡ (212) <95a 96>
      .possible:
          SUBB2    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3      ; entry_addr -= search_size
          ADDB2    SCRATCH1, #$10          ; entry_index += 16
          LDA      SCRATCH3                ; search_size /= 16
          LSR
          LSR
          LSR
          LSR
          STA      SCRATCH3

```

Uses ADDB2 16b, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209, and SUBB2 18a.

Now we compare the word. The words in the dictionary are numerically big-endian while the words in the ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 buffer are numerically little-endian, which explains the unusual order of the comparisons.

Since we know that the dictionary word must be in this chunk of 16 words if it exists, then if our word is less than the dictionary word, we can stop searching and declare failure.

```

96  <Match dictionary word 94>+≡ (212) <95b 97a>
    .inner_loop:
        LDY    #$00
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        INY
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        LDY    #$02
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        INY
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BEQ    .found

    .inner_next:
        ADDB2   SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3    ; entry_addr += search_size
        SUBB    SCRATCH1, #$01        ; --entry_index
        LDA     SCRATCH1
        ORA     SCRATCH1+1
        BNE     .inner_loop

Uses ADDB2 16b, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209, SUBB 17b,
and ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 209.

```

If the search failed, we return 0 in SCRATCH1.

```
97a  <Match dictionary word 94>+≡ (212) <96 97b>
      .not_found:
          LDA    #$00
          STA    SCRATCH1+1
          STA    SCRATCH1
          RTS
      Uses SCRATCH1 209.
```

Otherwise, return the z-address (i.e. the absolute address minus the header address) of the dictionary entry.

```
97b  <Match dictionary word 94>+≡ (212) <97a>
      .found:
          SUBW    SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH1
          RTS
      Uses SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, and SUBW 18b.
```

Chapter 8

Arithmetic routines

8.1 Negation and sign manipulation

`negate` negates the word in `SCRATCH2`.

98 $\langle \textit{negate} \ 98 \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `negate:`
 SUBROUTINE

 SUBW #\$0000, `SCRATCH2`, `SCRATCH2`
 RTS

Defines:

`negate`, used in chunks 99a, 100, and 108.
Uses `SCRATCH2` 209 and SUBW 18b.

`flip_sign` negates the word in `SCRATCH2` if the sign bit in the `A` register is set, i.e. if signed `A` is negative. We also keep track of the number of flips in `SIGN_BIT`.

99a $\langle \textit{Flip sign 99a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

flip_sign:
    SUBROUTINE

    ORA    #$00
    BMI    .do_negate
    RTS

.do_negate:
    INC    SIGN_BIT
    JMP    negate

```

Defines:

`flip_sign`, used in chunk 99b.

Uses `negate` 98.

`check_sign` sets the sign bit of `SCRATCH2` to support a 16-bit signed multiply, divide, or modulus operation on `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`. That is, if the sign bits are the same, `SCRATCH2` retains its sign bit, otherwise its sign bit is flipped.

The `SIGN_BIT` value also contains the number of negative sign bits in `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`, so 0, 1, or 2.

99b $\langle \textit{Check sign 99b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

check_sign:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    #$00
    STA    SIGN_BIT
    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    JSR    flip_sign
    LDA    SCRATCH1+1
    JSR    flip_sign
    RTS

```

Defines:

`check_sign`, used in chunks 175–77.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, and `flip_sign` 99a.

`set_sign` checks the number of negatives counted up in `SIGN_BIT` and sets the sign bit of `SCRATCH2` accordingly. That is, odd numbers of negative signs will flip the sign bit of `SCRATCH2`.

100 $\langle Set\ sign\ 100 \rangle \equiv$ (212)
`set_sign:`
SUBROUTINE

```
LDA    SIGN_BIT
AND    #$01
BNE    negate
RTS
```

Defines:

`set_sign`, used in chunk 177.

Uses `negate` 98.

8.2 16-bit multiplication

`mulu16` multiplies the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1` by the unsigned word in `SCRATCH2`, storing the result in `SCRATCH1`.

Note that this routine only handles unsigned multiplication. Taking care of signs is part of `instr_mul`, which uses this routine and the sign manipulation routines.

```

101  <mulu16 101>≡ (212)
      mulu16:
          SUBROUTINE

          PSHW    SCRATCH3
          STOW    #$0000, SCRATCH3
          LDX     #$10

      .loop:
          LDA     SCRATCH1
          CLC
          AND     #$01
          BEQ     .next_bit
          ADDWC   SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3, SCRATCH3

      .next_bit:
          RORW    SCRATCH3
          RORW    SCRATCH1
          DEX
          BNE     .loop

          MOVW    SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
          MOVW    SCRATCH3, SCRATCH1
          PULW    SCRATCH3
          RTS

```

Defines:

`mulu16`, used in chunk 177.

Uses `ADDWC` 17a, `MOVW` 13a, `PSHW` 13b, `PULW` 14a, `RORW` 19, `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `SCRATCH3` 209, and `STOW` 11.

8.3 16-bit division

`divu16` divides the unsigned word in `SCRATCH2` (the dividend) by the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1` (the divisor), storing the quotient in `SCRATCH2` and the remainder in `SCRATCH1`.

Under this routine, the result of division by zero is a quotient of $2^{16} - 1$, while the remainder depends on the high bit of the dividend. If the dividend's high bit is 0, the remainder is the dividend. If the dividend's high bit is 1, the remainder is the dividend with the high bit set to 0.

Note that this routine only handles unsigned division. Taking care of signs is part of `instr_div`, which uses this routine and the sign manipulation routines.

The idea behind this routine is to do long division. We bring the dividend into a scratch space one bit at a time (starting with the most significant bit) and see if the divisor fits into it. If it does, we can record a 1 in the quotient, and subtract the divisor from the scratch space. If it doesn't, we record a 0 in the quotient. We do this for all 16 bits in the dividend. Whatever remains in the scratch space is the remainder.

For example, suppose we want to divide decimal `SCRATCH2 = 37 = 0b10101` by `SCRATCH1 = 10 = 0b1010`. This is something the `print_number` routine might do.

The routine starts with storing `SCRATCH2` to `SCRATCH3 = 37 = 0b100101` and then setting `SCRATCH2` to zero. This is our scratch space, and will ultimately become the remainder.

Interestingly here, we don't start with shifting the dividend. Instead we do the subtraction first. There's no harm in this, since we are guaranteed that the subtraction will fail (be negative) on the first iteration, so we shift in a zero.

It should be clear that as we shift the dividend into the scratch space, eventually the scratch space will contain `0b10010`, and the subtraction will succeed. We then shift in a 1 into the quotient, and subtract the divisor `0b1010` from the scratch space `0b10010`, leaving `0b1000`. There is now only one bit left in the dividend (1).

We shift that into the scratch space, which is now `0b10001`, and the subtraction will succeed again. We shift in a 1 into the quotient, and subtract the divisor from the scratch space, leaving `0b111`. There are no bits left in the dividend, so we are done. The quotient is `0b11 = 3` and the scratch space is `0b111 = 7`, which is the remainder as expected.

Because the algorithm always does the shift, it will also shift the remainder one time too many, which is why the last step is to shift it right and store the result.

Here's a trace of the algorithm:

```

103  <trace of divu16 103>≡
    Begin, x=17: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0000000000100101
    Loop,  x=16: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=00000000001001010
    Loop,  x=15: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000000000010010100
    Loop,  x=14: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0000000010010101000
    Loop,  x=13: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000000010010100000
    Loop,  x=12: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000000100101000000
    Loop,  x=11: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000001001010000000
    Loop,  x=10: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000100101000000000
    Loop,  x=09: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=001001010000000000
    Loop,  x=08: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=010010100000000000
    Loop,  x=07: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=100101000000000000
    Loop,  x=06: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000000001, s3=001010000000000000
    Loop,  x=05: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000000010, s3=010100000000000000
    Loop,  x=04: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000000100, s3=101000000000000000
    Loop,  x=03: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000001001, s3=010000000000000000
    Loop,  x=02: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000010010, s3=100000000000000000
    Loop,  x=01: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000010001, s3=000000000000000001
    Loop,  x=00: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000001110, s3=000000000000000011
    End,    x=00: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000001110, s3=000000000000000011
    After adjustment shift and remainder storage:
    End,    x=00: s1=0000000000000111, s2=0000000000000011

```


Notice that `SCRATCH3` is used for both the dividend and the quotient. As we shift bits out of the left of the dividend and into the scratch space `SCRATCH2`, we also shift bits into the right as the quotient. After going through 16 bits, the dividend is all out and the quotient is all in.

104 $\langle \text{divu16 } 104 \rangle \equiv$ (212)
`divu16:`

`SUBROUTINE`

```
PSHW    SCRATCH3
MOVW    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3 ; SCRATCH3 is the dividend
STOW    #$0000, SCRATCH2  ; SCRATCH2 is the remainder
LDX     #$11
```

```
.loop:
SEC                                ; carry = "not borrow"
LDA     SCRATCH2                  ; Remainder minus divisor (low byte)
SBC     SCRATCH1
TAY
LDA     SCRATCH2+1
SBC     SCRATCH1+1
BCC     .skip                    ; Divisor did not fit
```

```
; At this point carry is set, which will affect
; the ROLs below.
```

```
STA     SCRATCH2+1              ; Save remainder
TYA
STA     SCRATCH2
```

```
.skip:
ROLW    SCRATCH3                ; Shift carry into divisor/quotient left
ROLW    SCRATCH2                ; Shift divisor/remainder left
DEX
BNE     .loop                   ; loop end

CLC                                ; SCRATCH1 = SCRATCH2 >> 1
LDA     SCRATCH2+1
ROR
STA     SCRATCH1+1
LDA     SCRATCH2
ROR
STA     SCRATCH1                ; remainder
MOVW    SCRATCH3, SCRATCH2      ; quotient
PULW    SCRATCH3
RTS
```

Defines:

`divu16`, used in chunks 107, 175, 176, and 178a.

Uses `MOVW 13a`, `PSHW 13b`, `PULW 14a`, `ROLW 18c`, `SCRATCH1 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`, `SCRATCH3 209`, and `STOW 11`.

8.4 16-bit comparison

`cmpu16` compares the unsigned words in `SCRATCH2` to the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1`. For example, if, as an unsigned comparison, `SCRATCH2 < SCRATCH1`, then `BCC` will detect this condition.

105a $\langle \text{cmpu16 } 105a \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    cmpu16:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA    SCRATCH2+1
            CMP    SCRATCH1+1
            BNE    .end
            LDA    SCRATCH2
            CMP    SCRATCH1
        .end:
        RTS

```

Defines:

`cmpu16`, used in chunks 105b and 185a.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 209 and `SCRATCH2` 209.

`cmp16` compares the two signed words in `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`.

105b $\langle \text{cmp16 } 105b \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    cmp16:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA    SCRATCH1+1
            EOR    SCRATCH2+1
            BPL    cmpu16
            LDA    SCRATCH1+1
            CMP    SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`cmp16`, used in chunks 181a, 183a, and 184a.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, and `cmpu16` 105a.

8.5 Other routines

`A_mod_3` is a routine that calculates the modulus of the `A` register with 3, by repeatedly subtracting 3 until the result is less than 3. It is used in the Z-machine to calculate the alphabet shift.

```

106   $\langle A \bmod 3 \rangle \equiv$  (212)
      A_mod_3:
          CMP      #$03
          BCC      .end
          SEC
          SBC      #$03
          JMP      A_mod_3

      .end:
          RTS

```

Defines:

`A_mod_3`, used in chunks 67, 87a, and 89.

8.6 Printing numbers

The `print_number` routine prints the signed number in `SCRATCH2` as decimal to the output buffer.

107 *<Print number 107>*≡ (212)

```

print_number:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    BPL    .print_positive
    JSR    print_negative_num

.print_positive:
    STOB    #$00, SCRATCH3

.loop:
    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    ORA    SCRATCH2
    BEQ    .is_zero
    STOW    #$000A, SCRATCH1
    JSR    divu16
    LDA    SCRATCH1
    PHA
    INC    SCRATCH3
    JMP    .loop

.is_zero:
    LDA    SCRATCH3
    BEQ    .print_0

.print_digit:
    PLA
    CLC
    ADC    #$30            ; '0'
    JSR    buffer_char
    DEC    SCRATCH3
    BNE    .print_digit
    RTS

.print_0:
    LDA    #$30            ; '0'
    JMP    buffer_char

```

Defines:

`print_number`, used in chunks 72 and 190a.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `SCRATCH3` 209, `STOB` 12b, `STOW` 11, `buffer_char` 60, `divu16` 104, and `print_negative_num` 108.

The `print_negative_num` routine is a utility used by `print_num`, just to print the negative sign and negate the number before printing the rest.

```
108  ⟨Print negative number 108⟩≡ (212)
      print_negative_num:
      SUBROUTINE

      LDA    $$2D          ; '-'
      JSR    buffer_char
      JMP    negate
```

Defines:

`print_negative_num`, used in chunk 107.

Uses `buffer_char` 60 and `negate` 98.

Chapter 9

Disk routines

```
109  <iob struct 109>≡ (212)
      iob:
          DC      #$01          ; table_type (must be 1)
      iob.slot_times_16:
          DC      #$60          ; slot_times_16
      iob.drive:
          DC      #$01          ; drive_number
          DC      #$00          ; volume
      iob.track:
          DC      #$00          ; track
      iob.sector:
          DC      #$00          ; sector
          DC.W    #dct          ; dct_addr
      iob.buffer:
          DC.W    #$0000        ; buffer_addr
          DC      #$00          ; unused
          DC      #$00          ; partial_byte_count
      iob.command:
          DC      #$00          ; command
          DC      #$00          ; ret_code
          DC      #$00          ; last_volume
          DC      #$60          ; last_slot_times_16
          DC      #$00          ; last_drive_number

      dct:
          DC      #$00          ; device_type (0 for DISK II)
          DC      #$01          ; phases_per_track (1 for DISK II)
      dct.motor_count:
          DC.W    #$EFD8        ; motor_on_time_count ($EFD8 for DISK II)
```

Defines:

dct, used in chunk 112.

iob, used in chunks 110, 150, and 152.

```

iob.buffer, never used.
iob.command, never used.
iob.drive, never used.
iob.sector, never used.
iob.slot.times.16, never used.
iob.track, never used.

```

The `do_rwts_on_sector` can read or write a sector using the RWTS routine in DOS. `SCRATCH1` contains the sector number relative to track 3 sector 0 (and can be ≥ 16), and `SCRATCH2` contains the buffer to read into or write from.

The A register contains the command: 1 for read, and 2 for write.

110 \langle Do RWTS on sector 110 $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

do_rwts_on_sector:
    SUBROUTINE

    STA     iob.command
    LDA     SCRATCH2
    STA     iob.buffer
    LDA     SCRATCH2+1
    STA     iob.buffer+1
    LDA     #$03
    STA     iob.track
    LDA     SCRATCH1
    LDX     SCRATCH1+1
    SEC

.adjust_track:
    SBC     SECTORS_PER_TRACK
    BCS     .inc_track
    DEX
    BMI     .do_read
    SEC

.inc_track:
    INC     iob.track
    JMP     .adjust_track

.do_read:
    CLC
    ADC     SECTORS_PER_TRACK
    STA     iob.sector
    LDA     #$1D
    LDY     #$AC
    JSR     RWTS
    RTS

```

Defines:

`do_rwts_on_sector`, used in chunks 111 and 112.

Uses RWTS 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SECTORS_PER_TRACK 209, and iob 109.

The `read_from_sector` routine reads the sector number in `SCRATCH1` from the disk into the buffer in `SCRATCH2`. Other entry points are `read_next_sector`, which sets the buffer to `BUFF_AREA`, increments `SCRATCH1` and then reads, and `inc_sector_and_read`, which does the same but assumes the buffer has already been set in `SCRATCH2`.

111 \langle Reading sectors 111 $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

read_next_sector:
    SUBROUTINE

    STOW    #BUFF_AREA, SCRATCH2

inc_sector_and_read:
    SUBROUTINE

    INCW    SCRATCH1

read_from_sector:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA     #$01
    JSR     do_rwts_on_sector
    RTS

```

Defines:

`inc_sector_and_read`, used in chunk 158b.
`read_from_sector`, used in chunks 32b, 33, 43, and 46.
`read_next_sector`, used in chunks 156c and 158a.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 209, `INCW` 14b, `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `STOW` 11, and `do_rwts_on_sector` 110.

For some reason the `write_next_sector` routine temporarily stores the standard `#$D8EF` into the disk motor on-time count. There doesn't seem to be any reason for this, since the motor count is never set to anything else.

```

112  <Writing sectors 112>≡ (212)
      write_next_sector:
          SUBROUTINE

          STOW      #BUFF_AREA, SCRATCH2

      inc_sector_and_write:
          SUBROUTINE

          INCW      SCRATCH1

      .write_next_sector:
          LDA      dct.motor_count
          PHA
          LDA      dct.motor_count+1
          PHA
          STOW2     #$D8EF, dct.motor_count
          LDA      #$02
          JSR      do_rwts_on_sector
          PLA
          STA      dct.motor_count+1
          PLA
          STA      dct.motor_count
          RTS

```

Defines:

`inc_sector_and_write`, used in chunk 155b.
`write_next_sector`, used in chunks 154b and 155a.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 209, `INCW` 14b, `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `STOW` 11, `STOW2` 12a, `dct` 109,
and `do_rwts_on_sector` 110.

Chapter 10

The instruction dispatcher

10.1 Executing an instruction

The addresses for instructions handlers are stored in tables, organized by number of operands:

```
113  <Instruction tables 113>≡ (212)
      routines_table_0op:
          WORD    instr_rtrue
          WORD    instr_rfalse
          WORD    instr_print
          WORD    instr_print_ret
          WORD    instr_nop
          WORD    instr_save
          WORD    instr_restore
          WORD    instr_restart
          WORD    instr_ret_popped
          WORD    instr_pop
          WORD    instr_quit
          WORD    instr_new_line

      routines_table_1op:
          WORD    instr_jz
          WORD    instr_get_sibling
          WORD    instr_get_child
          WORD    instr_get_parent
          WORD    instr_get_prop_len
          WORD    instr_inc
          WORD    instr_dec
          WORD    instr_print_addr
          WORD    illegal_opcode
```

```
WORD    instr_remove_obj
WORD    instr_print_obj
WORD    instr_ret
WORD    instr_jump
WORD    instr_print_paddr
WORD    instr_load
WORD    instr_not

routines_table_2op:
WORD    illegal_opcode
WORD    instr_je
WORD    instr_jl
WORD    instr_jg
WORD    instr_dec_chk
WORD    instr_inc_chk
WORD    instr_jin
WORD    instr_test
WORD    instr_or
WORD    instr_and
WORD    instr_test_attr
WORD    instr_set_attr
WORD    instr_clear_attr
WORD    instr_store
WORD    instr_insert_obj
WORD    instr_loadw
WORD    instr_loadb
WORD    instr_get_prop
WORD    instr_get_prop_addr
WORD    instr_get_next_prop
WORD    instr_add
WORD    instr_sub
WORD    instr_mul
WORD    instr_div
WORD    instr_mod

routines_table_var:
WORD    instr_call
WORD    instr_storew
WORD    instr_storeb
WORD    instr_put_prop
WORD    instr_sread
WORD    instr_print_char
WORD    instr_print_num
WORD    instr_random
WORD    instr_push
WORD    instr_pull
```

Defines:

```
routines_table_0op, used in chunk 117b.
routines_table_1op, used in chunk 119b.
routines_table_2op, used in chunk 121c.
```

routines_table_var, used in chunk 123.
 Uses illegal_opcode 162, instr_add 174b, instr_and 179a, instr_call 129,
 instr_clear_attr 191, instr_dec 174a, instr_dec_chk 180b, instr_div 175,
 instr_get_next_prop 193, instr_get_parent 194, instr_get_prop 195,
 instr_get_prop_addr 198, instr_get_prop_len 199, instr_get_sibling 200,
 instr_inc 173c, instr_inc_chk 181a, instr_insert_obj 201, instr_je 181b,
 instr_jg 183a, instr_jin 183b, instr_jl 184a, instr_jump 186a, instr_jz 184b,
 instr_load 169a, instr_loadb 170a, instr_loadw 169b, instr_mod 176, instr_mul 177,
 instr_new_line 188b, instr_nop 204a, instr_not 179b, instr_or 180a, instr_pop 172b,
 instr_print 189a, instr_print_addr 189b, instr_print_char 189c, instr_print_num 190a,
 instr_print_obj 190b, instr_print_paddr 190c, instr_print_ret 186b, instr_pull 173a,
 instr_push 173b, instr_put_prop 202, instr_quit 205, instr_random 178a,
 instr_remove_obj 203a, instr_restart 204b, instr_restore 156b, instr_ret 133,
 instr_ret_popped 187a, instr_rfalse 187b, instr_rtrue 188a, instr_save 153a,
 instr_set_attr 203b, instr_sread 76, instr_store 170b, instr_storeb 172a,
 instr_storew 171, instr_sub 178c, instr_test 185a, and instr_test_attr 185b.

Instructions from this table get executed with all operands loaded in OPERANDO-OPERAND3,
 the address of the routine table to use in SCRATCH2, and the index into the table
 stored in the A register. Then we can execute the instruction. This involves
 looking up the routine address, storing it in SCRATCH1, and jumping to it.

All instructions must, when they are complete, jump back to do_instruction.

115 $\langle \text{Execute instruction 115} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 .opcode_table_jump:
 ASL
 TAY
 LDA (SCRATCH2),Y
 STA SCRATCH1
 INY
 LDA (SCRATCH2),Y
 STA SCRATCH1+1
 JSR DEBUG_JUMP
 JMP (SCRATCH1)

Defines:

.opcode_table_jump, never used.

Uses DEBUG_JUMP 209, SCRATCH1 209, and SCRATCH2 209.

The call to `debug` is just a return, but I suspect that it was used during development to provide a place to put a debugging hook, for example, to print out the state of the Z-machine on every instruction.

10.2 Retrieving the instruction

We execute the instruction at the current program counter by first retrieving its opcode. `get_next_code_byte` retrieves the code byte at `Z_PC`, placing it in `A`, and then increments `Z_PC`.

116

<Do instruction 116>≡(212) 117a>

do_instruction:

SUBROUTINE

MOVWZ_PC, TMP_Z_PC; Save PC for debugging

LDAZ_PC+2

STATMP_Z_PC+2

STOB#\$00, OPERAND_COUNT

JSRget_next_code_byte

STACURR_OPCODE

Defines:
do_instruction, used in chunks 36b, 77, 132b, 163, 165b, 168, 170–74, 188–91, and 201–4.
Uses CURR_OPCODE 209, MOVW 13a, OPERAND_COUNT 209, STOB 12b, TMP_Z_PC 209, Z_PC 209,
and get_next_code_byte 40.

Byte range	Type
0x00-0x7F	2op
0x80-0xAF	1op
0xB0-0xBF	0op
0xC0-0xFF	needs next byte to determine

10.3 Decoding the instruction

Next, we determine how many operands to read. Note that for instructions that store a value, the storage location is not part of the operands; it comes after the operands, and is determined by the individual instruction's routine.

```

117a  <Do instruction 116>+≡ (212) <116
      CMP    $$80          ; is 2op?
      BCS    .is_gte_80
      JMP    .do_2op

      .is_gte_80:
      CMP    $$B0          ; is 1op?
      BCS    .is_gte_B0
      JMP    .do_1op

      .is_gte_B0:
      CMP    $$C0          ; is 0op?
      BCC    .do_0op
      JSR    get_next_code_byte

      ; Falls through to varop handling.

      <Handle varop instructions 122>
Uses get_next_code_byte 40.

```

10.3.1 0op instructions

Handling a 0op-type instruction is easy enough. We check for the legal opcode range (`$$B0-$$BB`), otherwise it's an illegal instruction. Then we load the address of the 0op instruction table into `SCRATCH2`, leaving the `A` register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

```

117b  <Handle 0op instructions 117b>≡ (212)
      .do_0op:
      SEC
      SBC    $$B0
      CMP    $$0C
      BCC    .load_opcode_table
      JMP    illegal_opcode

      .load_opcode_table:
      PHA
      STOW   routines_table_0op, SCRATCH2
      PLA
      JMP    .opcode_table_jump
Uses SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, illegal_opcode 162, and routines_table_0op 113.

```

10.3.2 1op instructions

Handling a 1op-type instruction (opcodes #80-#AF) is a little more complicated. Since only opcodes #X8 are illegal, this is handled in the 1op routine table.

Opcodes #80-#8F take a 16-bit operand.

```
118a  <Handle 1op instructions 118a>≡ (212) 118b>
      .do_1op:
          AND    $$30
          BNE    .is_90_to_AF
          JSR    get_const_word ; Get operand for opcodes 80-8F
          JMP    .1op_arg_loaded
      Uses get_const_word 124b.
```

Opcodes #90-#9F take an 8-bit operand zero-extended to 16 bits.

```
118b  <Handle 1op instructions 118a>+≡ (212) <118a 118c>
      .is_90_to_AF:
          CMP    $$10
          BNE    .is_A0_to_AF
          JSR    get_const_byte ; Get operand for opcodes 90-9F
          JMP    .1op_arg_loaded
      Uses get_const_byte 124a.
```

Opcodes #A0-#AF take a variable number operand, whose content is 16 bits.

```
118c  <Handle 1op instructions 118a>+≡ (212) <118b 118d>
      .is_A0_to_AF:
          JSR    get_var_content ; Get operand for opcodes A0-AF
      Uses get_var_content 125.
```

The resulting 16-bit operand is placed in OPERANDO, and OPERAND_COUNT is set to 1.

```
118d  <Handle 1op instructions 118a>+≡ (212) <118c 119a>
      .1op_arg_loaded:
          STOB    $$01, OPERAND_COUNT
          MOVW    SCRATCH2, OPERANDO
      Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND_COUNT 209, SCRATCH2 209, and STOB 12b.
```

Then we check for illegal instructions, which in this case never happens. This could have been left over from a previous version of the z-machine where the range of legal 1op instructions was different.

```
119a  <Handle 1op instructions 118a>+≡ (212) <118d 119b>
      LDA      CURR_OPCODE
      AND      #$0F
      CMP      #$10
      BCC      .go_to_1op
      JMP      illegal_opcode
Uses CURR_OPCODE 209 and illegal_opcode 162.
```

Then we load the 1op instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

```
119b  <Handle 1op instructions 118a>+≡ (212) <119a>
      .go_to_1op:
      PHA
      STOW      routines_table_1op, SCRATCH2
      PLA
      JMP      .opcode_table_jump
Uses SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, and routines_table_1op 113.
```


10.3.3 2op instructions

Handling a 2op-type instruction (opcodes #00-#7F) is a little more complicated than 1op instructions.

The operands are determined by bits 6 and 5, while bits 4 through 0 determine the instruction.

The first operand is determined by bit 6. Opcodes with bit 6 clear are followed by a single byte to be zero-extended into a 16-bit operand, while opcodes with bit 6 set are followed by a single byte representing a variable number. This operand is stored in OPERANDO.

```
120a  <Handle 2op instructions 120a>≡ (212) 120b>
      .do_2op:
          AND      #$40
          BNE      .first_arg_is_var
          JSR      get_const_byte
          JMP      .get_next_arg

      .first_arg_is_var:
          JSR      get_var_content

      .get_next_arg:
          MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERANDO
```

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, get_const_byte 124a, and get_var_content 125.

The second operand is determined by bit 5. Opcodes with bit 5 clear are followed by a single byte to be zero-extended into a 16-bit operand, while opcodes with bit 5 set are followed by a single byte representing a variable number. This operand is stored in OPERAND1.

```
120b  <Handle 2op instructions 120a>+≡ (212) <120a 121a>
      LDA      CURR_OPCODE
      AND      #$20
      BNE      .second_arg_is_var
      JSR      get_const_byte
      JMP      .store_second_arg

      .second_arg_is_var:
          JSR      get_var_content

      .store_second_arg:
          MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERAND1
```

Uses CURR_OPCODE 209, MOVW 13a, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, get_const_byte 124a, and get_var_content 125.

OPERAND_COUNT is set to 2.

121a $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 120a} \rangle + \equiv$ (212) $\triangleleft 120b \ 121b \triangleright$
 STOB #\$02, OPERAND_COUNT
 Uses OPERAND_COUNT 209 and STOB 12b.

Then we check for illegal instructions, which are those with the low 5 bits in the range #19-#1F.

121b $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 120a} \rangle + \equiv$ (212) $\triangleleft 121a \ 121c \triangleright$
 LDA CURR_OPCODE

```
.check_for_good_2op:
    AND     #$1F
    CMP     #$19
    BCC     .go_to_op2
    JMP     illegal_opcode
```

Defines:

 .check_for_good_2op, never used.
 Uses CURR_OPCODE 209 and illegal_opcode 162.

Then we load the 2op instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

121c $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 120a} \rangle + \equiv$ (212) $\triangleleft 121b$
 .go_to_op2:
 PHA
 STOW routines_table_2op, SCRATCH2
 PLA
 JMP .opcode_table_jump
 Uses SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, and routines_table_2op 113.

Bits	Type	Bytes in operand
00	Large constant (0x0000-0xFFFF)	2
01	Small constant (0x00-0xFF)	1
10	Variable address	1
11	None (ends operand list)	0

10.3.4 varop instructions

Handling a varop-type instruction (opcodes # $\$C0$ –# $\$FF$) is the most complicated. Interestingly, opcodes # $\$C0$ –# $\$DF$ map to 2op instructions (in their lower 5 bits).

The next byte is a map that determines the next operands. We look at two consecutive bits, starting from the most significant. The operand types are encoded as follows:

The values of the operands are stored consecutively starting in location OPERANDO.

```

122  <Handle varop instructions 122>≡                                     (117a) 123>
      LDX      #$00                                     ; operand number

      .get_next_operand:
      PHA                                     ; save operand map
      TAY
      TXA
      PHA                                     ; save operand number
      TYA
      AND      #$C0                               ; check top 2 bits
      BNE      .is_01_10_11
      JSR      get_const_word                     ; handle 00
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_01_10_11:
      CMP      #$80
      BNE      .is_01_11
      JSR      get_var_content                     ; handle 10
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_01_11:
      CMP      #$40
      BNE      .is_11
      JSR      get_const_byte                     ; handle 01
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_11:
      PLA
      PLA

```

```

        JMP      .handle_varoperand_opcode ; handle 11 (ends operand list)

.store_operand:
    PLA
    TAX
    LDA      SCRATCH2
    STA      OPERANDO,X
    LDA      SCRATCH2+1
    STA      OPERANDO,X
    INX
    INX
    INC      OPERAND_COUNT
    PLA
                                ; shift operand map left 2 bits
    SEC
    ROL
    SEC
    ROL
    JMP      .get_next_operand

```

Uses OPERANDO 209, OPERAND_COUNT 209, SCRATCH2 209, get_const_byte 124a, get_const_word 124b, and get_var_content 125.

Then we load the varop instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute. However, we also check for illegal opcodes. Since opcodes #C0-#DF map to 2op instructions in their lower 5 bits, we simply hook into the 2op routine to do the opcode check and table jump.

Opcodes #EA-#FF are illegal.

```

123  <Handle varop instructions 122>+≡ (117a) <122
    .handle_varoperand_opcode:
        STOW    routines_table_var, SCRATCH2
        LDA     CURR_OPCODE
        CMP     #$E0
        BCS     .is_vararg_instr
        JMP     .check_for_good_2op

    .is_vararg_instr:
        SBC     #$E0                ; Allow only E0-E9.
        CMP     #$0A
        BCC     .opcode_table_jump
        JMP     illegal_opcode

```

Uses CURR_OPCODE 209, SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, illegal_opcode 162, and routines_table_var 113.

10.4 Getting the instruction operands

The utility routine `get_const_byte` gets the next byte of Z-code and stores it as a zero-extended 16-bit word in `SCRATCH2`.

124a $\langle \textit{Get const byte 124a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    get_const_byte:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      #$00
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_const_byte`, used in chunks 118b, 120, and 122.
 Uses `SCRATCH2` 209 and `get_next_code_byte` 40.

The utility routine `get_const_word` gets the next two bytes of Z-code and stores them as a 16-bit word in `SCRATCH2`. The word is stored big-endian in Z-code. The code in the routine is a little inefficient, since it uses the stack to shuffle bytes around, rather than storing the bytes directly in the right order.

124b $\langle \textit{Get const word 124b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    get_const_word:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        PHA
        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        STA      SCRATCH2
        PLA
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_const_word`, used in chunks 118a and 122.
 Uses `SCRATCH2` 209 and `get_next_code_byte` 40.

The utility routine `get_var_content` gets the next byte of Z-code and interprets it as a Z-variable address, then retrieves the variable's 16-bit value and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

Variable 00 always means the top of the Z-stack, and this will also pop the stack.

Variables 01-0F are “locals”, and stored as 2-byte big-endian numbers in the zero-page at `$9A-$B9` (the `LOCAL_ZVARS` area).

Variables 10-FF are “globals”, and are stored as 2-byte big-endian numbers in a location stored at `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR`.

```

125  <Get var content 125>≡ (212)
      get_var_content:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      get_next_code_byte      ; A = get_next_code_byte<Z_PC>
      ORA      #$00                    ; if (!A) get_top_of_stack
      BEQ      get_top_of_stack

      get_nonstack_var:
      SUBROUTINE

      CMP      #$10                    ; if (A < #$10) {
      BCS      .compute_global_var_index
      SEC
      SBC      #$01                    ;   SCRATCH2 = LOCAL_ZVARS[A - 1]
      ASL
      TAX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      INX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2
      RTS
                                     ;   return
                                     ; }

      .compute_global_var_index:
      SEC                                     ; var_ptr = 2 * (A - #$10)
      SBC      #$10
      ASL
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      #$00
      ROL
      STA      SCRATCH1+1

      .get_global_var_addr:
      CLC                                     ; var_ptr += GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR
      LDA      GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR

```

```

        ADC      SCRATCH1
        STA      SCRATCH1
        LDA      GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1
        ADC      SCRATCH1+1
        STA      SCRATCH1+1

.get_global_var_value:
        LDY      #$00                      ; SCRATCH2 = *var_ptr
        LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        INY
        LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2
        RTS                      ; return

.get_top_of_stack:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop                      ; SCRATCH2 = pop()
        RTS                      ; return

```

Defines:

`get_nonstack_var`, used in chunk 126.

`get_top_of_stack`, never used.

`get_var_content`, used in chunks 118c, 120, and 122.

Uses `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` 209, `LOCAL_ZVARS` 209, `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `Z_PC` 209,

`get_next_code_byte` 40, and `pop` 39.

There's another utility routine `var_get` which does the same thing, except the variable address is already stored in the A register.

```

126  <Get var content in A 126>≡ (212)
      var_get:
      SUBROUTINE

      ORA      #$00
      BEQ      pop_push
      JMP      get_nonstack_var

```

Defines:

`var_get`, used in chunks 72, 164, and 169a.

Uses `get_nonstack_var` 125 and `pop_push` 128.

The routine `store_var` stores `SCRATCH2` into the variable in the next code byte, while `store_var2` stores `SCRATCH2` into the variable in the `A` register. Since variable 0 is the stack, storing into variable 0 is equivalent to pushing onto the stack.

```

127  <Store var 127>≡ (212)
      store_var:
          SUBROUTINE

              LDA    SCRATCH2          ; A = get_next_code_byte()
              PHA
              LDA    SCRATCH2+1
              PHA
              JSR    get_next_code_byte
              TAX
              PLA
              STA    SCRATCH2+1
              PLA
              STA    SCRATCH2
              TXA

store_var2:
    SUBROUTINE

        ORA    #$00
        BNE    .nonstack
        JMP    push

.nonstack:
    CMP    #$10
    BCS    .global_var
    SEC
    SBC    #$01
    ASL
    TAX
    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
    INX
    LDA    SCRATCH2
    STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
    RTS

.global_var:
    SEC
    SBC    #$10
    ASL
    STA    SCRATCH1
    LDA    #$00
    ROL
    STA    SCRATCH1+1

```



```

CLC
LDA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR
ADC    SCRATCH1
STA    SCRATCH1
LDA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1
ADC    SCRATCH1+1
STA    SCRATCH1+1
LDY    #$00
LDA    SCRATCH2+1
STA    (SCRATCH1),Y
INY
LDA    SCRATCH2
STA    (SCRATCH1),Y
RTS

```

Defines:

store_var, used in chunks 163a and 192.

Uses GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR 209, LOCAL_ZVARS 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209,
get_next_code_byte 40, and push 38.

The var_put routine stores the value in SCRATCH2 into the variable in the A register. Note that if the variable is 0, then it replaces the top value on the stack.

128 $\langle \text{Store to var A 128} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

var_put:
SUBROUTINE

ORA    #$00
BEQ    .pop_push
JMP    store_var2

pop_push:
JSR    pop
JMP    push

.pop_push:
LDA    SCRATCH2
PHA
LDA    SCRATCH2+1
PHA
JSR    pop
PLA
STA    SCRATCH2+1
PLA
STA    SCRATCH2
JMP    push

```

Defines:

pop_push, used in chunk 126.

var_put, used in chunks 164a and 170b.

Uses SCRATCH2 209, pop 39, and push 38.

Chapter 11

Calls and returns

11.1 Call

The `call` instruction calls the routine at the packed address in operand 0. A call may have anywhere from 0 to 3 arguments, and a routine always has a return value. Note that calls to address 0 merely returns false (0).

The z-code byte after the operands gives the variable in which to store the return value from the call.

```
129  <Instruction call 129>≡ (212) 130a>
      instr_call:
          LDA    OPERANDO
          ORA    OPERANDO+1
          BNE    .push_frame
          STOW   #$0000, SCRATCH2
          JMP    store_and_next
```

Defines:

`instr_call`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `OPERANDO` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `STOW` 11, and `store_and_next` 163a.

Packed addresses are byte addresses divided by two.

The routine's arguments are stored in local variables (starting from variable 1). Such used local variables are saved before the call, and restored after the call.

As usual with calls, calls push a frame onto the stack, while returns pop a frame off the stack.

The frame consists of the frame's stack count, Z_PC, and the frame's stack pointer.

```
130a  <Instruction call 129>+≡ (212) <129 130b>
      .push_frame:
      MOVB    FRAME_STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2
      MOVB    Z_PC, SCRATCH2+1
      JSR     push
      MOVW    FRAME_Z_SP, SCRATCH2
      JSR     push
      MOVW    Z_PC+1, SCRATCH2
      JSR     push
      STOB    #$00, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
```

Uses FRAME_STACK_COUNT 209, FRAME_Z_SP 209, MOVB 12b, MOVW 13a, SCRATCH2 209, STOB 12b, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 209, Z_PC 209, and push 38.

Next, we unpack the call address and put it in Z_PC.

```
130b  <Instruction call 129>+≡ (212) <130a 130c>
      LDA     OPERANDO
      ASL
      STA     Z_PC
      LDA     OPERANDO+1
      ROL
      STA     Z_PC+1
      LDA     #$00
      ROL
      STA     Z_PC+2
```

Uses OPERANDO 209 and Z_PC 209.

The first byte in a routine is the number of local variables (0-15). We now retrieve it (and save it for later).

```
130c  <Instruction call 129>+≡ (212) <130b 131>
      JSR     get_next_code_byte    ; local_var_count = get_next_code_byte()
      PHA
      ORA     #$00                  ; Save local_var_count
      BEQ     .after_loop2
```

Uses get_next_code_byte 40.

Now we push and initialize the local variables. The next words in the routine are the initial values of the local variables.

```

131  <Instruction call 129>+≡                                     (212) <130c 132a>
      LDX      #$00                                           ; X = 0

      .push_and_init_local_vars:
      PHA                                           ; Save local_var_count
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X                         ; Push LOCAL_ZVAR[X] onto the stack
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      INX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2
      DEX
      TXA
      PHA
      JSR      push

      JSR      get_next_code_byte      ; SCRATCH2 = next init val
      PHA
      JSR      get_next_code_byte
      STA      SCRATCH2
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH2+1

      PLA                                           ; Restore local_var_count
      TAX
      LDA      SCRATCH2+1                         ; LOCAL_ZVARS[X] = SCRATCH2
      STA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      INX
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      STA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      INX                                           ; Increment X
      PLA                                           ; Decrement local_var_count
      SEC
      SBC      #$01
      BNE      .push_and_init_local_vars ; Loop until no more vars

```

Uses LOCAL_ZVARS 209, SCRATCH2 209, get_next_code_byte 40, and push 38.

Next, we load the local variables with the call arguments.

```

132a  <Instruction call 129>+≡ (212) <131 132b>
      .after_loop2:
          LDA    OPERAND_COUNT          ; count = OPERAND_COUNT - 1
          STA    SCRATCH3
          DEC    SCRATCH3
          BEQ    .done_init_local_vars ; if (!count) .done_init_local_vars

          STOB   #$00, SCRATCH1          ; operand = 0
          STOB   #$00, SCRATCH2          ; zvar = 0

      .loop:
          LDX    SCRATCH1                ; LOCAL_ZVARS[zvar] = OPERANDO[operand]
          LDA    OPERANDO+1,X
          LDX    SCRATCH2
          STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
          INC    SCRATCH2
          LDX    SCRATCH1
          LDA    OPERANDO,X
          LDX    SCRATCH2
          STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
          INC    SCRATCH2                ; ++zvar
          INC    SCRATCH1                ; ++operand
          INC    SCRATCH1
          DEC    SCRATCH3                ; --count
          BNE    .loop                  ; if (count) .loop

```

Uses LOCAL_ZVARS 209, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND_COUNT 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209, and STOB 12b.

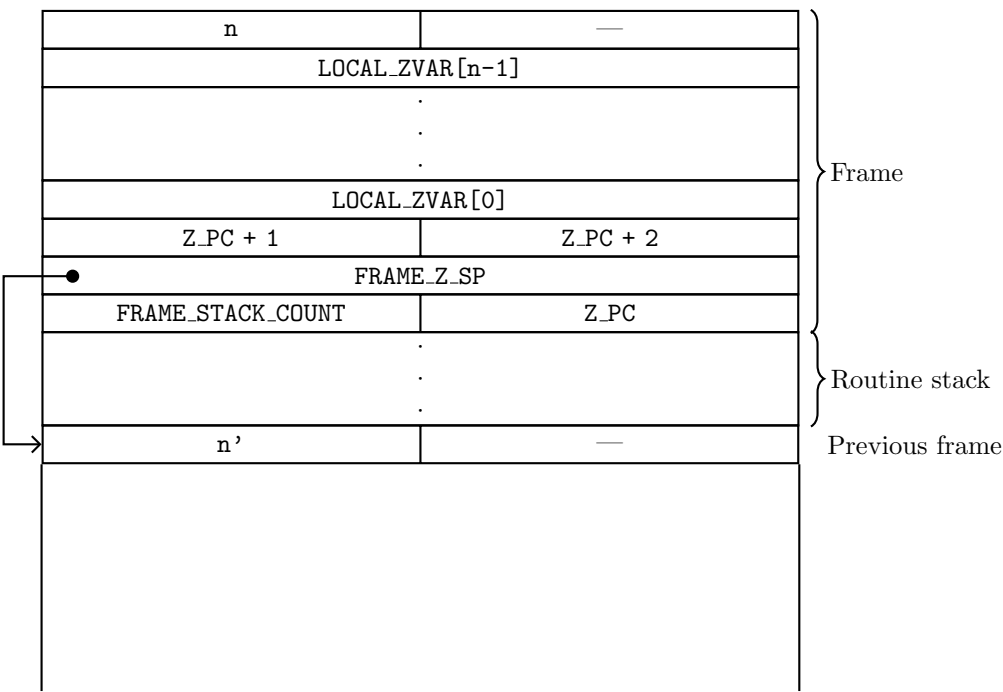
Finally, we add the local var count to the frame, update FRAME_STACK_COUNT and FRAME_Z_SP, and jump to the routine's first instruction.

```

132b  <Instruction call 129>+≡ (212) <132a>
      .done_init_local_vars:
          PULB   SCRATCH2                ; Restore local_var_count
          JSR    push                    ; Push local_var_count
          MOVB   STACK_COUNT, FRAME_STACK_COUNT
          MOVW   Z_SP, FRAME_Z_SP
          JMP    do_instruction

```

Uses FRAME_STACK_COUNT 209, FRAME_Z_SP 209, MOVB 12b, MOVW 13a, PULB 13c, SCRATCH2 209, STACK_COUNT 209, Z_SP 209, do_instruction 116, and push 38.



11.2 Return

The `ret` instruction returns from a routine. It effectively undoes what `call` did. First, we set the stack pointer and count to the frame’s stack pointer and count.

```
133  <Instruction ret 133>≡ (212) 134a>
      instr_ret:
      SUBROUTINE

      MOVW    FRAME_Z_SP, Z_SP
      MOVB    FRAME_STACK_COUNT, STACK_COUNT
```

Defines:
 `instr_ret`, used in chunks 113, 187a, and 188a.
Uses `FRAME_STACK_COUNT` 209, `FRAME_Z_SP` 209, `MOVB` 12b, `MOVW` 13a, `STACK_COUNT` 209, and `Z_SP` 209.

Next, we restore the locals. We first pop the number of locals off the stack, and if there were none, we can skip the whole local restore process.

```
134a  <Instruction ret 133>+≡ (212) <133 134b>
      JSR      pop
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      BEQ      .done_locals
Uses SCRATCH2 209 and pop 39.
```

We then set up the loop variables for restoring the locals.

```
134b  <Instruction ret 133>+≡ (212) <134a 134c>
      STOW     LOCAL_ZVARS-2, SCRATCH1    ; ptr = &LOCAL_ZVARS[-1]
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3         ; count = STRATCH2
      ASL                      ; ptr += 2 * count
      ADDA     SCRATCH1
Uses ADDA 15a, LOCAL_ZVARS 209, MOVW 12b, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209,
and STOW 11.
```

Now we pop the locals off the stack in reverse order.

```
134c  <Instruction ret 133>+≡ (212) <134b 134d>
      .loop:
      JSR      pop                      ; SCRATCH2 = pop()
      LDY      #$01                    ; *ptr = SCRATCH2
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      STA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      DEY
      LDA      SCRATCH2+1
      STA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      SUBB     SCRATCH1, #$02          ; ptr -= 2
      DEC      SCRATCH3                ; --count
      BNE      .loop
Uses SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209, SUBB 17b, and pop 39.
```

Next, we restore Z_PC and the frame stack pointer and count.

```
134d  <Instruction ret 133>+≡ (212) <134c 135>
      .done_locals:
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, Z_PC+1
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, FRAME_Z_SP
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2+1, Z_PC
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, FRAME_STACK_COUNT
Uses FRAME_STACK_COUNT 209, FRAME_Z_SP 209, MOVW 12b, MOVW 13a, SCRATCH2 209, Z_PC 209,
and pop 39.
```

Finally, we store the return value.

```
135  <Instruction ret 133>+≡ (212) <134d
      STOB    #$00, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
      JMP     store_and_next
Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, STOB 12b, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 209,
and store_and_next 163a.
```


Chapter 12

Objects

12.1 Object table format

Objects are stored in an object table, and there are at most 255 of them. They are numbered from 1 to 255, and object 0 is the “nothing” object.

The object table contains 31 words (62 bytes) for property defaults, and then at most 255 objects, each containing 9 bytes.

The first 4 bytes of each object entry are 32 bits of attribute flags (offsets 0-3). Next is the parent object number (offset 4), the sibling object number (offset 5), and the child object number (offset 6). Finally, there are two bytes of properties (offsets 7 and 8).

12.2 Getting an object’s address

The `get_object_address` routine gets the address of the object number in the A register and puts it in `SCRATCH2`.

It does this by first setting `SCRATCH2` to 9 times the A register (since objects entries are 9 bytes long).

```
136  <Get object address 136>≡ (212) 137a>
      get_object_addr:
      SUBROUTINE

      STA    SCRATCH2
      LDA    #$00
```

```

STA    SCRATCH2+1
LDA    SCRATCH2
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
CLC
ADC    SCRATCH2
BCC    .continue
INC    SCRATCH2+1
CLC

```

.continue:

Defines:

get_object_addr, used in chunks 138, 140–42, 144, 183b, 192, 194, 200, and 201.
 Uses SCRATCH2 209.

Next, we add FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET (53) to SCRATCH2. This skips the 31 words of property defaults, which would be 62 bytes, but since object numbers start from 1, the first object is at 53+9=62 bytes.

```

137a  <Get object address 136>+≡ (212) <136 137b>
      ADC    #FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET
      STA    SCRATCH2
      BCC    .continue2
      INC    SCRATCH2+1

```

.continue2:

Uses FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET 211a and SCRATCH2 209.

Finally, we get the address of the object table stored in the header and add it to SCRATCH2. The resulting address is thus in SCRATCH2.

```

137b  <Get object address 136>+≡ (212) <137a
      LDY    #HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET-1
      LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      CLC
      ADC    SCRATCH2
      STA    SCRATCH2
      DEY
      LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      ADC    SCRATCH2+1
      ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
      STA    SCRATCH2+1
      RTS

```

Uses HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET 211a and SCRATCH2 209.

12.3 Removing an object

The `remove_obj` routine removes the object number in `OPERANDO` from the object tree. This detaches the object from its parent, but the object retains its children.

Recall that an object is a node in a linked list. Each node contains a pointer to its parent, a pointer to its sibling (the next child of the parent), and a pointer to its first child. The null pointer is zero.

First, we get the object's address, and then get its parent pointer. If the parent pointer is null, it means the object is already detached, so we return.

```
138a  <Remove object 138a>≡ (212) 138b>
      remove_obj:
      SUBROUTINE

      LDA     OPERANDO          ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<obj_num>
      JSR     get_object_addr
      LDY     #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET ; A = obj_ptr->parent
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
      BNE     .continue        ; if (!A) return
      RTS
```

.continue:

Defines:

`remove_obj`, used in chunks 201 and 203a.

Uses `OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET` 211a, `OPERANDO` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, and `get_object_addr` 136.

Next, we save the object's address on the stack.

```
138b  <Remove object 138a>+≡ (212) <138a 138c>
      TAX
      LDA     SCRATCH2          ; save obj_ptr
      PHA
      LDA     SCRATCH2+1
      PHA
      TXA
```

Uses `SCRATCH2` 209.

Next, we get the parent's first child pointer.

```
138c  <Remove object 138a>+≡ (212) <138b 139a>
      JSR     get_object_addr    ; parent_ptr = get_object_addr<A>
      LDY     #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET ; child_num = parent_ptr->child
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
```

Uses `OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET` 211a, `SCRATCH2` 209, and `get_object_addr` 136.

If the first child pointer isn't the object we want to detach, then we will need to traverse the children list to find it.

```
139a  <Remove object 138a>+≡ (212) <138c 139b>
      CMP      OPERANDO          ; if (child_num != obj_num) loop
      BNE      .loop
Uses OPERANDO 209.
```

But otherwise, we get the object's sibling and replace the parent's first child with it.

```
139b  <Remove object 138a>+≡ (212) <139a 140a>
      PLA                                ; restore obj_ptr
      STA      SCRATCH1+1
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      PHA
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      PHA
      LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; A = obj_ptr->next
      LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      LDY      #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET  ; parent_ptr->child = A
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      JMP      .detach
Uses OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET 211a, OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET 211a, SCRATCH1 209,
and SCRATCH2 209.
```

Detaching the object means we null out the parent pointer of the object. Then we can return.

```
139c  <Detach object 139c>≡ (140b)
      .detach:
      PLA                                ; restore obj_ptr
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH2
      LDY      #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET ; obj_ptr->parent = 0
      LDA      #$00
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      INY
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      RTS
Uses OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET 211a and SCRATCH2 209.
```

Looping over the children just involves traversing the children list and checking if the current child pointer is equal to the object we want to detach. For a self-consistent table, an object's parent must contain the object as a child, and so it would have to be found at some point.

```

140a  <Remove object 138a>+≡ (212) <139b 140b>
      .loop:
      JSR      get_object_addr      ; child_ptr = get_object_addr<child_num>
      LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; child_num = child_ptr->next
      LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      CMP      OPERANDO              ; if (child_num != obj_num) loop
      BNE      .loop

```

Uses OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET 211a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, and get_object_addr 136.

SCRATCH2 now contains the address of the child whose sibling is the object we want to detach. So, we set SCRATCH1 to the object we want to detach, get its sibling, and set it as the sibling of the SCRATCH2 object. Then we can detach the object.

Diagram this.

```

140b  <Remove object 138a>+≡ (212) <140a>
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH1+1          ; restore obj_ptr
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      PHA
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      PHA
      LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y        ; child_ptr->next = obj_ptr->next
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y

```

<Detach object 139c>

Uses SCRATCH1 209 and SCRATCH2 209.

12.4 Object strings

The `print_obj_in_A` routine prints the short name of the object in the A register. The short name of an object is stored at the beginning of the object's properties as a length-prefixed z-encoded string. The length is actually the number of words, not bytes or characters, and is a single byte. This means that the number of bytes in the string is at most $255 \times 2 = 510$. And since z-encoded characters are encoded as three characters for every two bytes, the number of characters in a short name is at most $255 \times 3 = 765$.

```

141  <Print object in A 141>≡ (212)
      print_obj_in_A:
          JSR      get_object_addr      ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<A>
          LDY      #OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET ; props_ptr = obj_ptr->props
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1+1
          INY
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1
          MOVW     SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
          INCW     SCRATCH2              ; ++props_ptr
          JSR      load_address          ; Z_PC2 = props_ptr
          JMP      print_zstring         ; print_zstring<Z_PC2>

```

Defines:

`print_obj_in_A`, used in chunks 72 and 190b.

Uses `INCW` 14b, `MOVW` 13a, `OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET` 211a, `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `get_object_addr` 136, `load_address` 48b, and `print_zstring` 65.

12.5 Object attributes

The attributes of an object are stored in the first 4 bytes of the object in the object table. These were also called “flags” in the original Infocom source code, and as such, attributes are binary flags. The order of attributes in these bytes is such that attribute 0 is in bit 7 of byte 0, and attribute 31 is in bit 0 of byte 3.

The `attr_ptr_and_mask` routine is used in attribute instructions to get the pointer to the attributes for the object in `OPERANDO` and mask for the attribute number in `OPERAND1`.

The result from this routine is that `SCRATCH1` contains the relevant attribute word, `SCRATCH3` contains the relevant attribute mask, and `SCRATCH2` contains the address of the attribute word.

We first set `SCRATCH2` to point to the 2-byte word containing the attribute.

```
142  <Get attribute pointer and mask 142>≡ (212) 143a>
    attr_ptr_and_mask:
        LDA     OPERANDO           ; SCRATCH2 = get_object_addr<obj_num>
        JSR     get_object_addr
        LDA     OPERAND1           ; if (attr_num >= #$10) {
        CMP     #$10               ;   SCRATCH2 += 2; attr_num -= #$10
        BCC     .continue2         ; }
        SEC
        SBC     #$10
        INCW    SCRATCH2
        INCW    SCRATCH2

    .continue2:
        STA     SCRATCH1           ; SCRATCH1 = attr_num
```

Defines:

`attr_ptr_and_mask`, used in chunks 185b, 191, and 203b.

Uses `INCW` 14b, `OPERANDO` 209, `OPERAND1` 209, `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209,
and `get_object_addr` 136.

Next, we set SCRATCH3 to #\$0001 and then bit-shift left by 15 minus the attribute (mod 16) that we want. Thus, attribute 0 and attribute 16 will result in #\$8000.

```

143a  <Get attribute pointer and mask 142>+≡ (212) <142 143b>
      STOW    #$0001, SCRATCH3
      LDA     #$0F
      SEC
      SBC     SCRATCH1
      TAX

      .shift_loop:
      BEQ     .done_shift
      ASL     SCRATCH3
      ROL     SCRATCH3+1
      DEX
      JMP     .shift_loop

      .done_shift:
Uses SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH3 209, and STOW 11.

```

Finally, we load the attribute word into SCRATCH1.

```

143b  <Get attribute pointer and mask 142>+≡ (212) <143a>
      LDY     #$00
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
      STA     SCRATCH1+1
      INY
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
      STA     SCRATCH1
      RTS

Uses SCRATCH1 209 and SCRATCH2 209.

```


12.6 Object properties

The pointer to the properties of an object is stored in the last 2 bytes of the object in the object table. The first “property” is actually the object’s short name, as detailed in [Object strings](#).

Each property starts with a size byte, which is encoded with the lower 5 bits being the property number, and the upper 3 bits being the data size minus 1 (so 0 means 1 byte and 7 means 8 bytes). The property numbers are ordered from lowest to highest for more efficient searching.

The `get_property_ptr` routine gets the pointer to the property table for the object in `OPERANDO` and stores it in `SCRATCH2`. In addition, it returns the size of the first “property” (the short name) in the Y register, so that `SCRATCH2+Y` would point to the first numbered property.

```

144  <Get property pointer 144>≡ (212)
      get_property_ptr:
          SUBROUTINE

              LDA      OPERANDO
              JSR      get_object_addr
              LDY      #OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              STA      SCRATCH1+1
              INY
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              STA      SCRATCH1
              ADDW     SCRATCH1, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
              LDY      #$00
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              ASL
              TAY
              INY
              RTS

```

Defines:

`get_property_ptr`, used in chunks [193](#), [195](#), [198](#), and [202](#).

Uses [ADDW 16c](#), [OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET 211a](#), [OPERANDO 209](#), [SCRATCH1 209](#), [SCRATCH2 209](#), and [get_object_addr 136](#).

The `get_property_num` routine gets the property number being currently pointed to.

145a $\langle \textit{Get property number 145a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `get_property_num:`
 SUBROUTINE

```
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        AND      #$1F
        RTS
```

Defines:

`get_property_num`, used in chunks 193, 195, 198, and 202.
Uses `SCRATCH2` 209.

The `get_property_len` routine gets the length of the property being currently pointed to, minus one.

145b $\langle \textit{Get property length 145b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `get_property_len:`
 SUBROUTINE

```
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        ROR
        ROR
        ROR
        ROR
        ROR
        AND      #$07
        RTS
```

Defines:

`get_property_len`, used in chunks 146, 197, 199, and 202.
Uses `SCRATCH2` 209.

The `next_property` routine updates the Y register to point to the next property in the property table.

```
146  ⟨Next property 146⟩≡ (212)
      next_property:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      get_property_len
      TAX

      .loop:
      INY
      DEX
      BPL      .loop
      INY
      RTS
```

Defines:

`next_property`, used in chunks 193, 195, 198, and 202.
Uses `get_property_len` 145b.

Chapter 13

Saving and restoring the game

13.0.1 Save prompts for the user

The first part of saving the game asks the user to insert a save diskette, along with the save number (0-7), the drive slot (1-7), and the drive number (1 or 2) containing the save disk.

We first prompt the user to insert the disk:

```
147  <Insert save diskette 147>≡ (212) 148a>
      please_insert_save_diskette:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      home
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
      STOW     sPleaseInsert, SCRATCH2
      LDX      #28
      JSR      print_ascii_string
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
```

Defines:

 please_insert_save_diskette, used in chunks 153a and 156b.

Uses SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, dump_buffer_with_more 57, home 51, print_ascii_string 62b,
and sPleaseInsert 148b.

Next, we prompt the user for what position they want to save into. The number must be between 0 and 7, otherwise the user is asked again.

```
148a  <Insert save diskette 147>+≡ (212) <147 150a>
      .get_position_from_user:
        LDA      #(sPositionPrompt-sSlotPrompt)
        STA      prompt_offset
        JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
        CMP      #'0
        BCC      .get_position_from_user
        CMP      #'8
        BCS      .get_position_from_user
        STA      save_position
        JSR      buffer_char
```

Uses buffer_char 60, prompt_offset 148b, sPositionPrompt 148b, sSlotPrompt 148b, and save_position 148b.

```
148b  <Save diskette strings 148b>≡ (212)
      sPleaseInsert:
        DC       "PLEASE INSERT SAVE DISKETTE,"
      prompt_offset:
        DC       0
      sSlotPrompt:
        DC       "SLOT      (1-7):"
      save_slot:
        DC       '6
      sDrivePrompt:
        DC       "DRIVE      (1-2):"
      save_drive:
        DC       '2
      sPositionPrompt:
        DC       "POSITION (0-7):"
      save_position:
        DC       '0
      sDefault:
        DC       "DEFAULT = "
      sReturnToBegin:
        DC       "--- PRESS 'RETURN' KEY TO BEGIN ---"
```

Defines:

```
prompt_offset, used in chunks 148-50.
sDrivePrompt, used in chunk 150b.
sPleaseInsert, used in chunk 147.
sPositionPrompt, used in chunk 148a.
sReturnToBegin, used in chunk 151a.
sSlotPrompt, used in chunks 148-50.
save_drive, used in chunks 150b and 236.
save_position, used in chunks 148a and 151b.
save_slot, used in chunks 149 and 150a.
```

The `get_prompted_number_from_user` routine takes an offset from the `sSlotPrompt` symbol in `prompt_offset`. This offset must point to a 15-character prompt. The routine will print the prompt along with its default value (the byte after the prompt), get a single digit from the user, and then store that back into the default value.

149 \langle Get prompted number from user 149 $\rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `get_prompted_number_from_user:`
 SUBROUTINE

```

JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
STOW     sSlotPrompt, SCRATCH2      ; print prompt
ADDB     SCRATCH2, prompt_offset
LDX      #15
JSR      print_ascii_string
JSR      dump_buffer_line
LDA      #25
STA      CH
LDA      #$3F                      ; set inverse
STA      INVFLG
STOW     sDefault, SCRATCH2        ; print "DEFAULT = "
LDX      #10
JSR      cout_string
STOW     save_slot, SCRATCH2        ; print default value
ADDB     SCRATCH2, prompt_offset
LDX      #1
JSR      cout_string
LDA      #$FF                      ; clear inverse
STA      INVFLG
JSR      RDKEY                      ; A = read key
PHA
LDA      #25
STA      CH
JSR      CLREOL                    ; clear line
PLA
CMP      #$8D                      ; newline?
BNE      .end
LDY      prompt_offset              ; store result
LDA      save_slot,Y

```

.end:

```

AND      #$7F
RTS

```

Uses `ADDB` 16a, `CH` 208, `CLREOL` 208, `INVFLG` 208, `RDKEY` 208, `SCRATCH2` 209, `STOW` 11, `cout_string` 50, `dump_buffer_line` 56, `dump_buffer_with_more` 57, `print_ascii_string` 62b, `prompt_offset` 148b, `sSlotPrompt` 148b, and `save_slot` 148b.

Getting back to the save procedure, we then ask the user for the drive slot, which must be between 1 and 7. We also store the slot times 16 in `iob.slot_times_16`.

```
150a  <Insert save diskette 147>+≡ (212) <148a 150b>
      .get_slot_from_user:
      LDA      #(sSlotPrompt - sSlotPrompt)
      STA      prompt_offset
      JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
      CMP      #'1
      BCC      .get_slot_from_user
      CMP      #'8
      BCS      .get_slot_from_user
      TAX
      AND      #$07
      ASL
      ASL
      ASL
      ASL
      STA      iob.slot_times_16
      TXA
      STA      save_slot
      JSR      buffer_char
```

Uses `buffer_char` 60, `iob` 109, `prompt_offset` 148b, `sSlotPrompt` 148b, and `save_slot` 148b.

Next, we ask the user for the drive number, which must be 1 or 2. This value is stored in `iob.drive`.

```
150b  <Insert save diskette 147>+≡ (212) <150a 151a>
      .get_drive_from_user:
      LDA      #(sDrivePrompt - sSlotPrompt)
      STA      prompt_offset
      JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
      CMP      #'1
      BCC      .get_drive_from_user
      CMP      #'3
      BCS      .get_drive_from_user
      TAX
      AND      #$03
      STA      iob.drive
      TXA
      STA      save_drive
      JSR      buffer_char
```

Uses `buffer_char` 60, `iob` 109, `prompt_offset` 148b, `sDrivePrompt` 148b, `sSlotPrompt` 148b, and `save_drive` 148b.

Next, we prompt the user to start.

```

151a  <Insert save diskette 147>+≡ (212) <150b 151b>
      .press_return_key_to_begin:
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sReturnToBegin, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #35
          JSR      print_ascii_string
          JSR      dump_buffer_line
          JSR      RDKEY
          CMP      #$8D
          BNE      .press_return_key_to_begin

```

Uses RDKEY 208, SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, dump_buffer_line 56, dump_buffer_with_more 57, print_ascii_string 62b, and sReturnToBegin 148b.

SCRATCH1 is going to contain $64 * \text{save_position} - 1$ at the end of the routine. This is the sector number (minus one) where the save data will be written. Thus, a save game takes 64 sectors.

```

151b  <Insert save diskette 147>+≡ (212) <151a
      LDA      #$FF
      STA      SCRATCH1
      STA      SCRATCH1+1
      LDA      save_position
      AND      #$07
      BEQ      .end
      TAY

      .loop:
          ADDB   SCRATCH1, #64
          DEY
          BNE    .loop

      .end:
          JSR    dump_buffer_with_more
          RTS

```

Uses ADDB 16a, SCRATCH1 209, dump_buffer_with_more 57, and save_position 148b.

When the save is eventually complete, the user is prompted to reinsert the game diskette.

```

152  <Reinsert game diskette 152>≡ (212)
      sReinsertGameDiskette:
          DC      "PLEASE RE-INSERT GAME DISKETTE,"
      sPressReturnToContinue:
          DC      "--- PRESS 'RETURN' KEY TO CONTINUE ---"

      please_reinsert_game_diskette:
          SUBROUTINE

          LDA      iob.slot_times_16
          CMP      #$60
          BNE      .set_slot6_drive1
          LDA      iob.drive
          CMP      #$01
          BNE      .set_slot6_drive1
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sReinsertGameDiskette, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #31
          JSR      print_ascii_string

      .await_return_key:
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sPressReturnToContinue, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #38
          JSR      print_ascii_string
          JSR      dump_buffer_line
          JSR      RDKEY
          CMP      #$8D
          BNE      .await_return_key
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more

      .set_slot6_drive1:
          LDA      #$60
          STA      iob.slot_times_16
          LDA      #$01
          STA      iob.drive
          RTS

```

Defines:

please_reinsert_game_diskette, used in chunks 155c, 156a, and 159.

sPressReturnToContinue, never used.

sReinsertGameDiskette, never used.

Uses RDKEY 208, SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, dump_buffer_line 56, dump_buffer_with_more 57, iob 109, and print_ascii_string 62b.

13.0.2 Saving the game state

When the virtual machine is instructed to save, the `instr_save` routine is executed.

The instruction first calls the `please_insert_save_diskette` routine to prompt the user to insert a save diskette and set the disk parameters.

153a $\langle \text{Instruction save 153a} \rangle \equiv$ (212) 153b \triangleright
`instr_save:`
`SUBROUTINE`

`JSR please_insert_save_diskette`

Defines:

`instr_save`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `please_insert_save_diskette` 147.

Next, we store the z-machine version number to the first byte of the `BUFF_AREA`. We maintain a pointer into the buffer in the X register.

153b $\langle \text{Instruction save 153a} \rangle + \equiv$ (212) \triangleleft 153a 153c \triangleright
`LDX #00`
`LDY #00`
`LDA (Z_HEADER_ADDR), Y`
`STA BUFF_AREA, X`
`INX`

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 209.

Next, we copy the 3 bytes of `Z_PC` to the buffer. This is actually done in reverse order.

153c $\langle \text{Instruction save 153a} \rangle + \equiv$ (212) \triangleleft 153b 154b \triangleright
`STOW #Z_PC, SCRATCH2`
`LDY #03`
`JSR copy_data_to_buff`

Uses `SCRATCH2` 209, `STOW` 11, `Z_PC` 209, and `copy_data_to_buff` 154a.

The `copy_data_to_buff` routine copies the number of bytes in the Y register from the address in `SCRATCH2` to the buffer, updating X as the pointer into the buffer.

154a $\langle \textit{Copy data to buff 154a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `copy_data_to_buff:`
 SUBROUTINE

```

DEY
LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
STA      BUFF_AREA,X
INX
CPY      #$00
BNE      copy_data_to_buff
RTS

```

Defines:

`copy_data_to_buff`, used in chunks 153-55.

Uses `BUFF_AREA 209` and `SCRATCH2 209`.

We copy the 30 bytes of the `LOCAL_ZVARS` to the buffer, then 6 bytes for the stack state starting from `STACK_COUNT`. The collected buffer is then written to the first save sector on disk.

154b $\langle \textit{Instruction save 153a} \rangle + \equiv$ (212) $\langle 153c \ 155a \rangle$
 `STOW #LOCAL_ZVARS, SCRATCH2`
 `LDY #30`
 `JSR copy_data_to_buff`

 `STOW #STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2`
 `LDY #6`
 `JSR copy_data_to_buff`

```

JSR      write_next_sector
BCS      .fail

```

Uses `LOCAL_ZVARS 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`, `STACK_COUNT 209`, `STOW 11`, `copy_data_to_buff 154a`, and `write_next_sector 112`.

The second sector written contains 256 bytes starting from #0280, and the third sector contains 256 bytes starting from #0380.

```

155a  <Instruction save 153a>+≡ (212) <154b 155b>
      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0280, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$00
      JSR      copy_data_to_buff

      JSR      write_next_sector
      BCS      .fail

      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0380, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$68
      JSR      copy_data_to_buff

      JSR      write_next_sector
      BCS      .fail

```

Uses SCRATCH2 209, STOW 11, copy_data_to_buff 154a, and write_next_sector 112.

Next, we write the game memory starting from Z_HEADER_ADDR all the way up to the base of static memory given by the header.

```

155b  <Instruction save 153a>+≡ (212) <155a 155c>
      MOVW     Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      STA      SCRATCH3 ; big-endian!
      INC      SCRATCH3

      .loop:
      JSR      inc_sector_and_write
      BCS      .fail
      INC      SCRATCH2+1
      DEC      SCRATCH3
      BNE      .loop
      JSR      inc_sector_and_write
      BCS      .fail

```

Uses HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE 211a, MOVW 13a, SCRATCH2 209, SCRATCH3 209, and inc_sector_and_write 112.

Finally, we ask the user to reinsert the game diskette, and we're done. The instruction branches, assuming success.

```

155c  <Instruction save 153a>+≡ (212) <155b 156a>
      JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
      JMP      branch

```

Uses branch 165a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 152.

On failure, the instruction also asks the user to reinsert the game diskette, but branches assuming failure.

```
156a  <Instruction save 153a>+≡ (212) <155c>
      .fail:
          JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
          JMP      negated_branch
      Uses negated_branch 165a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 152.
```

13.0.3 Restoring the game state

When the virtual machine is instructed to restore, the `instr_restore` routine is executed. The instruction starts by asking the user to insert the save diskette, and sets up the disk parameters.

```
156b  <Instruction restore 156b>≡ (212) 156c>
      instr_restore:
          SUBROUTINE

          JSR      please_insert_save_diskette
      Defines:
          instr_restore, used in chunk 113.
      Uses please_insert_save_diskette 147.
```

The next step is to read the first sector and check the z-machine version number to make sure it's the same as the currently executing z-machine version. Otherwise the instruction fails.

```
156c  <Instruction restore 156b>+≡ (212) <156b 157a>
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCC      .continue
      JMP      .fail

      .continue:
          LDX      #$00
          LDY      #$00
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          CMP      BUFF_AREA,X
          BEQ      .continue2
          JMP      .fail
      Uses BUFF_AREA 209 and read_next_sector 111.
```

We also save the current game flags in the header at byte #11.

```
157a  <Instruction restore 156b>+≡ (212) <156c 157b>
      .continue2:
          LDY    #11                ; Game flags.
          LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA    SIGN_BIT
```

We then restore the Z_PC, local variables, and stack state from the same sector.

```
157b  <Instruction restore 156b>+≡ (212) <157a 158a>
      INX
      STOW      #Z_PC, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #3
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
      LDA      #$00
      STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      STOW      #LOCAL_ZVARS, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #30
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
      STOW      #STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #6
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
```

Uses LOCAL_ZVARS 209, SCRATCH2 209, STACK_COUNT 209, STOW 11, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 209, Z_PC 209, and copy_data_from_buff 157c.

The copy_data_from_buff routine copies the number of bytes in the Y register from BUFF_AREA to the address in SCRATCH2, updating X as the pointer into the buffer.

```
157c  <Copy data from buff 157c>≡ (212)
      copy_data_from_buff:
      SUBROUTINE

      DEY
      LDA      BUFF_AREA,X
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      INX
      CPY      #$00
      BNE      copy_data_from_buff
      RTS
```

Defines:

copy_data_from_buff, used in chunks 157b and 158a.

Uses BUFF_AREA 209 and SCRATCH2 209.

Next we restore 256 bytes starting from `#$0280` from the second sector, and 256 bytes starting from `#$0380` from the third sector.

```
158a  <Instruction restore 156b>+≡ (212) <157b 158b>
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCS      .fail
      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0280, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$00
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCS      .fail
      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0380, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$68
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
```

Uses `SCRATCH2 209`, `STOW 11`, `copy_data_from_buff 157c`, and `read_next_sector 111`.

Next, we restore the game memory starting from `Z_HEADER_ADDR` all the way up to the base of static memory given by the header.

```
158b  <Instruction restore 156b>+≡ (212) <158a 158c>
      MOVW     Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$0E
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      STA      SCRATCH3                ; big-endian!
      INC      SCRATCH3

      .loop:
      JSR      inc_sector_and_read
      BCS      .fail
      INC      SCRATCH2+1
      DEC      SCRATCH3
      BNE      .loop
```

Uses `MOVW 13a`, `SCRATCH2 209`, `SCRATCH3 209`, and `inc_sector_and_read 111`.

Then we restore the game flags in the header at byte `#$11` from before the actual restore.

```
158c  <Instruction restore 156b>+≡ (212) <158b 159a>
      LDA      SIGN_BIT
      LDY      #$11
      STA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
```

Finally, we ask the user to reinsert the game diskette, and we're done. The instruction branches, assuming success.

```
159a  <Instruction restore 156b>+≡ (212) <158c 159b>
      JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
      JMP      branch
Uses branch 165a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 152.
```

On failure, the instruction also asks the user to reinsert the game diskette, but branches assuming failure.

```
159b  <Instruction restore 156b>+≡ (212) <159a
      .fail:
      JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
      JMP      negated_branch
Uses negated_branch 165a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 152.
```


Chapter 14

Instructions

After an instruction finishes, it must jump to `do_instruction` in order to execute the next instruction.

Note that return values from functions are always stored in `OPERANDO`.

Data movement instructions	
<code>load</code>	Loads a variable into a variable
<code>loadb</code>	Loads a byte from a byte array into a variable
<code>loadw</code>	Loads a word from a word array into a variable
<code>store</code>	Stores a value into a variable
<code>storeb</code>	Stores a byte into a byte array
<code>storew</code>	Stores a word into a word array
Stack instructions	
<code>pop</code>	Throws away the top item from the stack
<code>pull</code>	Pulls a value from the stack into a variable
<code>push</code>	Pushes a value onto the stack
Decrement/increment instructions	
<code>dec</code>	Decrements a variable
<code>inc</code>	Increments a variable
Arithmetic instructions	
<code>add</code>	Adds two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>div</code>	Divides two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>mod</code>	Modulus of two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>mul</code>	Multiplies two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>random</code>	Stores a random number to a variable

sub	Subtracts two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
Logical instructions	
and	Bitwise ANDs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable
not	Bitwise NOTs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable
or	Bitwise ORs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable
Conditional branch instructions	
dec_chk	Decrements a variable then branches if less than value
inc_chk	Increments a variable then branches if greater than value
je	Branches if value is equal to any subsequent operand
jg	Branches if value is (signed) greater than second operand
jin	Branches if object is a direct child of second operand object
j1	Branches if value is (signed) less than second operand
jz	Branches if value is equal to zero
test	Branches if all set bits in first operand are set in second operand
test_attr	Branches if object has attribute in second operand set
Jump and subroutine instructions	
call	Calls a subroutine
jump	Jumps unconditionally
print_ret	Prints a string and returns true
ret	Returns a value
ret_popped	Returns the popped value from the stack
rfalse	Returns false
rtrue	Returns true
Print instructions	
new_line	Prints a newline
print	Prints the immediate string
print_addr	Prints the string at an address
print_char	Prints the immediate character
print_num	Prints the signed number
print_obj	Prints the object's short name
print_paddr	Prints the string at a packed address
Object instructions	
clear_attr	Clears an object's attribute
get_child	Stores the object's first child into a variable
get_next_prop	Stores the object's property number after the given property number into a variable
get_parent	Stores the object's parent into a variable
get_prop	Stores the value of the object's property into a variable
get_prop_addr	Stores the address of the object's property into a variable
get_prop_len	Stores the byte length of the object's property into a variable
get_sibling	Stores the next sibling of the object into a variable
insert_obj	Reparents the object to the destination object
put_prop	Stores the value into the object's property

<code>remove_obj</code>	Detaches the object from its parent
<code>set_attr</code>	Sets an object's attribute

Other instructions

<code>nop</code>	Does nothing
<code>restart</code>	Restarts the game
<code>restore</code>	Loads a saved game
<code>quit</code>	Quits the game
<code>save</code>	Saves the game
<code>sread</code>	Reads from the keyboard

14.1 Instruction utilities

There are a few utilities that are used in common by instructions.

`illegal_opcode` hits a BRK instruction.

162 $\langle \textit{Instruction illegal opcode 162} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    illegal_opcode:
        SUBROUTINE

```

```

        JSR      brk

```

Defines:

`illegal_opcode`, used in chunks **113**, **117b**, **119a**, **121b**, and **123**.

Uses `brk 34c`.

The `store_zero_and_next` routine stores the value 0 into the variable in the next byte, while `store_A_and_next` stores the value in the A register into the variable in the next byte. Finally, `store_and_next` stores the value in SCRATCH2 into the variable in the next byte.

163a \langle Store and go to next instruction 163a $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

store_zero_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    #$00

store_A_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    STA    SCRATCH2
    LDA    #$00
    STA    SCRATCH2+1

store_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    store_var
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`store_A_and_next`, used in chunks 193 and 199.
`store_and_next`, used in chunks 129, 135, 169, 170a, 174b, 176–80, 194, and 196–98.
`store_zero_and_next`, used in chunks 193 and 198.

Uses SCRATCH2 209, do_instruction 116, and store_var 127.

The `print_zstring_and_next` routine prints the z-encoded string at Z_PC2 to the screen, and then goes to the next instruction.

163b \langle Print zstring and go to next instruction 163b $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

print_zstring_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    print_zstring
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`print_zstring_and_next`, used in chunks 189b and 190c.

Uses do_instruction 116 and print_zstring 65.

The `inc_var` routine increments the variable in `OPERANDO`, and also stores the result in `SCRATCH2`.

164a $\langle \text{Increment variable 164a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
inc_var:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_get
        INCW    SCRATCH2
inc_var_continue:
        PSHW    SCRATCH2
        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_put
        PULW    SCRATCH2
        RTS
```

Defines:

`inc_var`, used in chunks 173c and 181a.

Uses `INCW` 14b, `OPERANDO` 209, `PSHW` 13b, `PULW` 14a, `SCRATCH2` 209, `var_get` 126, and `var_put` 128.

`dec_var` does the same thing as `inc_var`, except does a decrement.

164b $\langle \text{Decrement variable 164b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
dec_var:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_get
        SUBB    SCRATCH2, #$01
        JMP    inc_var_continue
```

Defines:

`dec_var`, used in chunks 174a and 180b.

Uses `OPERANDO` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `SUBB` 17b, and `var_get` 126.

14.1.1 Handling branches

Branch information is stored in one or two bytes, indicating what to do with the result of the test. If bit 7 of the first byte is 0, a branch occurs when the condition was false; if 1, then branch is on true.

There are two entry points here, `branch` and `negated_branch`, which are used when the branch condition previously checked is true and false, respectively.

`branch` checks if bit 7 of the offset data is clear, and if so, does the branch, otherwise skips to the next instruction.

`negated_branch` is the same, except that it inverts the branch condition.

```
165a  <Handle branch 165a>≡ (212) 165b>
      negated_branch:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR    get_next_code_byte
      ORA    #$00
      BMI    .do_branch
      BPL    .no_branch

      branch:
      JSR    get_next_code_byte
      ORA    #$00
      BPL    .do_branch
```

Defines:

`branch`, used in chunks 155c, 159a, 181, 182, and 184b.

`negated_branch`, used in chunks 156a, 159b, 181–85, and 192.

Uses `get_next_code_byte` 40.

If we're not branching, we check whether bit 6 is set. If so, we need to read the second byte of the offset data and throw it away. In either case, we go to the next instruction.

```
165b  <Handle branch 165a>+≡ (212) <165a 166>
      .no_branch:
      AND    #$40
      BNE    .next
      JSR    get_next_code_byte

      .next:
      JMP    do_instruction
```

Uses `do_instruction` 116 and `get_next_code_byte` 40.

With the first byte of the branch offset data in the A register, we check whether bit 6 is set. If so, the offset is (unsigned) 6 bits and we can move on, otherwise we need to tack on the next byte for a signed 14-bit offset. When we're done, SCRATCH2 will contain the signed offset.

```

166  <Handle branch 165a>+≡ (212) <165b 167a>
      .do_branch:
          TAX
          AND      #$40
          BEQ      .get_14_bit_offset

      .offset_is_6_bits:
          TXA
          AND      #$3F
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JMP      .check_for_return_false

      .get_14_bit_offset:
          TXA
          AND      #$3F
          PHA
          JSR      get_next_code_byte
          STA      SCRATCH2
          PLA
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          AND      #$20
          BEQ      .check_for_return_false
          LDA      SCRATCH2+1
          ORA      #$C0
          STA      SCRATCH2+1

```

Uses SCRATCH2 209 and get_next_code_byte 40.

An offset of 0 always means to return false from the current routine, while an offset of 1 means to return true. Otherwise, we fall through.

```

167a  <Handle branch 165a>+≡ (212) <166 167b>
      .check_for_return_false:
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          ORA    SCRATCH2
          BEQ    instr_rfalse
          LDA    SCRATCH2
          SEC
          SBC    #$01
          STA    SCRATCH2
          BCS    .check_for_return_true
          DEC    SCRATCH2+1

      .check_for_return_true:
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          ORA    SCRATCH2
          BEQ    instr_rtrue

```

Uses SCRATCH2 209, instr_rfalse 187b, and instr_rtrue 188a.

We now need to move execution to the instruction at address `Address after branch data + offset - 2`.

We subtract 1 from the offset in SCRATCH2. Note that above, we've already subtracted 1, so now we've subtracted 2 from the offset.

```

167b  <Handle branch 165a>+≡ (212) <167a 167c>
      branch_to_offset:
          SUBROUTINE

          SUBB    SCRATCH2, #$01

```

Defines:

`branch_to_offset`, used in chunk 186a.

Uses SCRATCH2 209 and SUBB 17b.

Next, we store twice the high byte of SCRATCH2 into SCRATCH1.

```

167c  <Handle branch 165a>+≡ (212) <167b 168>
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          STA    SCRATCH1
          ASL
          LDA    #$00
          ROL
          STA    SCRATCH1+1

```

Uses SCRATCH1 209 and SCRATCH2 209.

Finally, we add the signed 16-bit `SCRATCH2` to the 24-bit `Z_PC`, and go to the next instruction. We invalidate the zcode page if we've passed a page boundary.

Interestingly, although `Z_PC` is a 24-bit address, we AND the high byte with `#$01`, meaning that the maximum `Z_PC` would be `#$01FFFF`.

```

168  <Handle branch 165a>+≡ (212) <167c
      LDA      Z_PC
      CLC
      ADC      SCRATCH2
      BCC      .continue2
      INC      SCRATCH1
      BNE      .continue2
      INC      SCRATCH1+1

      .continue2:
      STA      Z_PC
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      ORA      SCRATCH1
      BEQ      .next

      CLC
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      ADC      Z_PC+1
      STA      Z_PC+1
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      ADC      Z_PC+2
      AND      #$01
      STA      Z_PC+2
      LDA      #$00
      STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      JMP      do_instruction

      .next:
      JMP      do_instruction

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` 209, `Z_PC` 209, and `do_instruction` 116.

14.2 Data movement instructions

14.2.1 load

load loads the variable in the operand into the variable in the next code byte.

169a $\langle \text{Instruction load 169a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_load:
  SUBROUTINE

  LDA      OPERANDO
  JSR      var_get
  JMP      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr_load, used in chunk 113.

Uses OPERANDO 209, store_and_next 163a, and var_get 126.

14.2.2 loadw

loadw loads a word from the array at the address given OPERANDO, indexed by OPERAND1, into the variable in the next code byte.

169b $\langle \text{Instruction loadw 169b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_loadw:
  SUBROUTINE

  ASL      OPERAND1          ; OPERAND1 *= 2
  ROL      OPERAND1+1
  ADDW     OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
  JSR      load_address
  JSR      get_next_code_word
  JMP      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr_loadw, used in chunk 113.

Uses ADDW 16c, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, get_next_code_word 48a, load_address 48b, and store_and_next 163a.

14.2.3 loadb

loadb loads a zero-extended byte from the array at the address given OPERANDO, indexed by OPERAND1, into the variable in the next code byte.

170a \langle Instruction loadb 170a $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_loadb:
    SUBROUTINE

    ADDW    OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2    ; SCRATCH2 = OPERANDO + OPERAND1
    JSR     load_address                    ; Z_PC2 = SCRATCH2
    JSR     get_next_code_byte2             ; A = *Z_PC2
    STA     SCRATCH2                        ; SCRATCH2 = uint16(A)
    LDA     #$00
    STA     SCRATCH2+1
    JMP     store_and_next                  ; store_and_next(SCRATCH2)

```

Defines:

instr_loadb, used in chunk 113.

Uses ADDW 16c, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, get_next_code_byte2 46, load_address 48b, and store_and_next 163a.

14.2.4 store

store stores OPERAND1 into the variable in OPERANDO.

170b \langle Instruction store 170b $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_store:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
    LDA     OPERANDO

stretch_var_put:
    JSR     var_put
    JMP     do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr_store, used in chunk 113.

stretch_var_put, used in chunk 173a.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, do_instruction 116, and var_put 128.

14.2.5 storew

`storew` stores `OPERAND2` into the word array pointed to by z-address `OPERANDO` at the index `OPERAND1`.

171 $\langle \text{Instruction storew 171} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_storew:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA      OPERAND1      ; SCRATCH2 = Z_HEADER_ADDR + OPERANDO + 2*OPERAND1
        ASL
        ROL      OPERAND1+1
        CLC
        ADC      OPERANDO
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      OPERAND1+1
        ADC      OPERANDO+1
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        ADDW     SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
        LDY      #$00
        LDA      OPERAND2+1
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        INY
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_storew`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `ADDW 16c`, `OPERANDO 209`, `OPERAND1 209`, `OPERAND2 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`,
and `do_instruction 116`.

14.2.6 storeb

`storeb` stores the low byte of `OPERAND2` into the byte array pointed to by `z-` address `OPERANDO` at the index `OPERAND1`.

172a $\langle \text{Instruction storeb 172a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_storeb:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA      OPERAND1          ; SCRATCH2 = Z_HEADER_ADDR + OPERANDO + OPERAND1
        CLC
        ADC      OPERANDO
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      OPERAND1+1
        ADC      OPERANDO+1
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        ADDW     SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
        LDY      #$00
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_storeb`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `ADDW 16c`, `OPERANDO 209`, `OPERAND1 209`, `OPERAND2 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`,
and `do_instruction 116`.

14.3 Stack instructions

14.3.1 pop

`pop` pops the stack. This throws away the popped value.

172b $\langle \text{Instruction pop 172b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_pop:
    SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_pop`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `do_instruction 116` and `pop 39`.

14.3.2 pull

pull pops the top value off the stack and puts it in the variable in OPERANDO.

173a $\langle \text{Instruction pull 173a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_pull:
 SUBROUTINE

```

      JSR      pop
      LDA      OPERANDO
      JMP      stretch_var_put

```

Defines:

 instr_pull, used in chunk 113.

Uses OPERANDO 209, pop 39, and stretch_var_put 170b.

14.3.3 push

push pushes the value in OPERANDO onto the z-stack.

173b $\langle \text{Instruction push 173b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_push:
 SUBROUTINE

```

      MOVW     OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
      JSR      push
      JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

 instr_push, used in chunk 113.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, do_instruction 116, and push 38.

14.4 Decrements and increments

14.4.1 inc

inc increments the variable in the operand.

173c $\langle \text{Instruction inc 173c} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_inc:
 SUBROUTINE

```

      JSR      inc_var
      JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

 instr_inc, used in chunk 113.

Uses do_instruction 116 and inc_var 164a.

14.4.2 dec

dec decrements the variable in the operand.

174a $\langle \text{Instruction dec 174a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_dec:
        SUBROUTINE

            JSR      dec_var
            JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr_dec, used in chunk 113.

Uses dec_var 164b and do_instruction 116.

14.5 Arithmetic instructions

14.5.1 add

add adds the first operand to the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte.

174b $\langle \text{Instruction add 174b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_add:
        SUBROUTINE

            ADDW      OPERANDO, OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
            JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr_add, used in chunk 113.

Uses ADDW 16c, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, and store_and_next 163a.

14.5.2 div

`div` divides the first operand by the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for dividing by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other divides, `divu16` is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

```

175  <Instruction div 175>≡ (212)
      instr_div:
          SUBROUTINE

              MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
              MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
              JSR      check_sign
              LDA      SCRATCH1+1
              BNE      .do_div
              LDA      SCRATCH1
              CMP      #$02
              BEQ      .shortcut_div2
              CMP      #$04
              BEQ      .shortcut_div4

          .do_div:
              JSR      divu16
              JMP      stretch_set_sign

          .shortcut_div4:
              LSR      SCRATCH2+1
              ROR      SCRATCH2

          .shortcut_div2:
              LSR      SCRATCH2+1
              ROR      SCRATCH2
              JMP      stretch_set_sign

```

Defines:

`instr_div`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `MOVW` 13a, `OPERANDO` 209, `OPERAND1` 209, `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `check_sign` 99b, and `divu16` 104.

14.5.3 mod

`mod` divides the first operand by the second operand and stores the remainder in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for dividing by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other divides, `divu16` is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

176 $\langle \textit{Instruction mod 176} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_mod:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR     check_sign
    JSR     divu16
    MOVW    SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
    JMP     store_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_mod`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `MOVW 13a`, `OPERANDO 209`, `OPERAND1 209`, `SCRATCH1 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`, `check_sign 99b`, `divu16 104`, and `store_and_next 163a`.

14.5.4 mul

mul multiplies the first operand by the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for multiplying by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other multiplies, mulu16 is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

177 $\langle \text{Instruction mul 177} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_mul:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR     check_sign
    LDA     SCRATCH1+1
    BNE     .do_mult
    LDA     SCRATCH1
    CMP     #$02
    BEQ     .shortcut_x2
    CMP     #$04
    BEQ     .shortcut_x4

.do_mult:
    JSR     mulu16

stretch_set_sign:
    JSR     set_sign
    JMP     store_and_next

.shortcut_x4:
    ASL     SCRATCH2
    ROL     SCRATCH2+1

.shortcut_x2:
    ASL     SCRATCH2
    ROL     SCRATCH2+1
    JMP     stretch_set_sign
```

Defines:

instr_mul, used in chunk 113.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, check_sign 99b, mulu16 101, set_sign 100, and store_and_next 163a.

14.5.5 random

random gets a random number between 1 and OPERANDO.

178a \langle *Instruction random 178a* $\rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_random:
 SUBROUTINE

```

MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH1
JSR      get_random
JSR      divu16
MOVW    SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
INCW    SCRATCH2
JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr_random, used in chunk 113.

Uses INCW 14b, MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, divu16 104, get_random 178b, and store_and_next 163a.

178b \langle *Get random 178b* $\rangle \equiv$ (212)
 get_random:
 SUBROUTINE

```

ROL      RANDOM_VAL+1
MOVW    RANDOM_VAL, SCRATCH2
RTS

```

Defines:

get_random, used in chunk 178a.

Uses MOVW 13a and SCRATCH2 209.

14.5.6 sub

sub subtracts the first operand from the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte.

178c \langle *Instruction sub 178c* $\rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_sub:
 SUBROUTINE

```

SUBW    OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr_sub, used in chunk 113.

Uses OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, SUBW 18b, and store_and_next 163a.

14.6 Logical instructions

14.6.1 and

and bitwise-ands the first operand with the second operand and stores the result in the variable given by the next code byte.

179a $\langle \text{Instruction and 179a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_and:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERAND1+1
    AND    OPERANDO+1
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    LDA    OPERAND1
    AND    OPERANDO
    STA    SCRATCH2
    JMP    store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr_and, used in chunk 113.

Uses OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, and store_and_next 163a.

14.6.2 not

not flips every bit in the variable in the operand and stores it in the variable in the next code byte.

179b $\langle \text{Instruction not 179b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_not:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERANDO
    EOR    #$FF
    STA    SCRATCH2
    LDA    OPERANDO+1
    EOR    #$FF
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    JMP    store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr_not, used in chunk 113.

Uses OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, and store_and_next 163a.

14.6.3 or

or bitwise-ors the first operand with the second operand and stores the result in the variable given by the next code byte.

180a $\langle \text{Instruction or 180a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_or:
SUBROUTINE

LDA    OPERAND1+1
ORA    OPERANDO+1
STA    SCRATCH2+1
LDA    OPERAND1
ORA    OPERANDO
STA    SCRATCH2
JMP    store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr_or, used in chunk 113.

Uses OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, and store_and_next 163a.

14.7 Conditional branch instructions

14.7.1 dec_chk

dec_chk decrements the variable in the first operand, and then jumps if it is less than the second operand.

180b $\langle \text{Instruction dec chk 180b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_dec_chk:
SUBROUTINE

JSR    dec_var
MOVW   OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
JMP    do_chk
```

Defines:

instr_dec_chk, used in chunk 113.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH1 209, dec_var 164b, and do_chk 181a.

14.7.2 inc_chk

`inc_chk` increments the variable in the first operand, and then jumps if it is greater than the second operand.

181a $\langle \text{Instruction } inc_chk \text{ 181a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_inc_chk:
    JSR      inc_var
    MOVW     SCRATCH2, SCRATCH1
    MOVW     OPERAND1, SCRATCH2

do_chk:
    JSR      cmp16
    BCC      stretch_to_branch
    JMP      negated_branch

stretch_to_branch:
    JMP      branch

```

Defines:

`do_chk`, used in chunk 180b.

`instr_inc_chk`, used in chunk 113.

`stretch_to_branch`, used in chunks 183–85.

Uses `MOVW 13a`, `OPERAND1 209`, `SCRATCH1 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`, `branch 165a`, `cmp16 105b`, `inc_var 164a`, and `negated_branch 165a`.

14.7.3 je

`je` jumps if the first operand is equal to any of the next operands. However, in negative node (`jne`), we jump if the first operand is not equal to any of the next operands.

First, we check that there is at least one operand, and if not, we hit a `BRK`.

181b $\langle \text{Instruction } je \text{ 181b} \rangle \equiv$ (212) 182a>

```

instr_je:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDX      OPERAND_COUNT
    DEX
    BNE      .check_second
    JSR      brk

```

Defines:

`instr_je`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `OPERAND_COUNT 209` and `brk 34c`.

Next, we check against the second operand, and if it's equal, we branch, and if that was the last operand, we negative branch.

```
182a  <Instruction je 181b>+≡ (212) <181b 182b>
      .check_second:
          LDA     OPERANDO
          CMP     OPERAND1
          BNE     .check_next
          LDA     OPERANDO+1
          CMP     OPERAND1+1
          BEQ     .branch

      .check_next:
          DEX
          BEQ     .neg_branch
```

Uses OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, and branch 165a.

Next we do the same with the third operand.

```
182b  <Instruction je 181b>+≡ (212) <182a 182c>
      LDA     OPERANDO
      CMP     OPERANDO+4
      BNE     .check_next2
      LDA     OPERANDO+1
      CMP     OPERANDO+5
      BEQ     .branch

      .check_next2:
          DEX
          BEQ     .neg_branch
```

Uses OPERANDO 209 and branch 165a.

And again with the fourth operand.

```
182c  <Instruction je 181b>+≡ (212) <182b>
      LDA     OPERANDO
      CMP     OPERANDO+6
      BNE     .check_second      ; why not just go to .neg_branch?
      LDA     OPERANDO+1
      CMP     OPERANDO+7
      BEQ     .branch

      .neg_branch:
          JMP     negated_branch

      .branch:
          JMP     branch
```

Uses OPERANDO 209, branch 165a, and negated_branch 165a.

14.7.4 jg

jg jumps if the first operand is greater than the second operand, in a signed comparison. In negative mode (jle), we jump if the first operand is less than or equal to the second operand.

183a $\langle \text{Instruction } jg \text{ 183a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_jg:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH1
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
    JSR     cmp16
    BCC     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr_jg, used in chunk 113.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, cmp16 105b, negated_branch 165a, and stretch_to_branch 181a.

14.7.5 jin

jin jumps if the first operand is a child object of the second operand.

183b $\langle \text{Instruction } jin \text{ 183b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_jin:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA     OPERANDO
    JSR     get_object_addr
    LDY     #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
    LDA     OPERAND1
    CMP     (SCRATCH2),Y
    BEQ     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr_jin, used in chunk 113.

Uses OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET 211a, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH2 209, get_object_addr 136, negated_branch 165a, and stretch_to_branch 181a.

14.7.6 jl

jl jumps if the first operand is less than the second operand, in a signed comparison. In negative mode (jge), we jump if the first operand is greater than or equal to the second operand.

184a $\langle \text{Instruction jl 184a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_jl:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR      cmp16
    BCC      stretch_to_branch
    JMP      negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr_jl, used in chunk 113.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, cmp16 105b, negated_branch 165a, and stretch_to_branch 181a.

14.7.7 jz

jz jumps if its operand is 0.

This also includes a “stretchy jump” for other instructions that need to branch.

184b $\langle \text{Instruction jz 184b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_jz:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA      OPERANDO+1
    ORA      OPERANDO
    BEQ      take_branch
    JMP      negated_branch
```

take_branch:

```
JMP      branch
```

Defines:

instr_jz, used in chunk 113.

take_branch, used in chunk 192.

Uses OPERANDO 209, branch 165a, and negated_branch 165a.

14.7.8 test

test jumps if all the bits in the first operand are set in the second operand.

185a $\langle \text{Instruction test 185a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_test:
        SUBROUTINE

        MOVB    OPERAND1+1, SCRATCH2+1
        AND     OPERAND0+1
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        MOVB    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
        AND     OPERAND0
        STA     SCRATCH1
        JSR     cmpu16
        BEQ     stretch_to_branch
        JMP     negated_branch

```

Defines:

instr_test, used in chunk 113.

Uses **MOVB 12b**, **OPERAND0 209**, **OPERAND1 209**, **SCRATCH1 209**, **SCRATCH2 209**, **cmpu16 105a**, **negated_branch 165a**, and **stretch_to_branch 181a**.

14.7.9 test_attr

test_attr jumps if the object in the first operand has the attribute number in the second operand set. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-anding them together. If the result is nonzero, the attribute is set.

185b $\langle \text{Instruction test attr 185b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_test_attr:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR     attr_ptr_and_mask
        LDA     SCRATCH1+1
        AND     SCRATCH3+1
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        LDA     SCRATCH1
        AND     SCRATCH3
        ORA     SCRATCH1+1
        BNE     stretch_to_branch
        JMP     negated_branch

```

Defines:

instr_test_attr, used in chunk 113.

Uses **SCRATCH1 209**, **SCRATCH3 209**, **attr_ptr_and_mask 142**, **negated_branch 165a**, and **stretch_to_branch 181a**.

14.8 Jump and subroutine instructions

14.8.1 call

`call` calls the routine at the given address. This instruction has been described in [Call](#).

14.8.2 jump

`jump` jumps relative to the signed operand. We subtract 1 from the operand so that we can call `branch_to_offset`, which does another decrement. Thus, the address to go to is the address after this instruction, plus the operand, minus 2.

186a $\langle \text{Instruction jump 186a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_jump:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    SUBB    SCRATCH2, #$01
    JMP     branch_to_offset

```

Defines:

`instr_jump`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `MOVW 13a`, `OPERANDO 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`, `SUBB 17b`, and `branch_to_offset 167b`.

14.8.3 print_ret

`print_ret` is the same as `print`, except that it prints a CRLF after the string, and then calls the `rtrue` instruction.

186b $\langle \text{Instruction print ret 186b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_print_ret:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR     print_string_literal
    LDA     #$0D
    JSR     buffer_char
    LDA     #$0A
    JSR     buffer_char
    JMP     instr_rtrue

```

Defines:

`instr_print_ret`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `buffer_char 60` and `instr_rtrue 188a`.

14.8.4 ret

`ret` returns from a routine. The operand is the return value. This instruction has been described in [Return](#).

14.8.5 ret_popped

`ret_popped` pops the stack and returns that value.

187a $\langle \text{Instruction } \textit{ret popped 187a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_ret_popped:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop
        MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERANDO
        JMP      instr_ret

```

Defines:

`instr_ret_popped`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `MOVW 13a`, `OPERANDO 209`, `SCRATCH2 209`, `instr_ret 133`, and `pop 39`.

14.8.6 rfalse

`rfalse` places `#$0000` into `OPERANDO0`, and then calls the `ret` instruction.

187b $\langle \text{Instruction } \textit{rfalse 187b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_rfalse:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA      #$00
        JMP      ret_a

```

Defines:

`instr_rfalse`, used in chunks 113 and 167a.

Uses `ret_a 188a`.

14.8.7 rtrue

rtrue places #\$0001 into OPERANDO, and then calls the ret instruction.

188a \langle Instruction rtrue 188a $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_rtrue:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA    #$01
ret_a:
            STA    OPERANDO
            LDA    #$00
            STA    OPERANDO+1
            JMP    instr_ret

```

Defines:

 instr_rtrue, used in chunks 113, 167a, and 186b.

 ret_a, used in chunk 187b.

Uses OPERANDO 209 and instr_ret 133.

14.9 Print instructions

14.9.1 new_line

new_line prints CRLF.

188b \langle Instruction new line 188b $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_new_line:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA    #$0D
            JSR    buffer_char
            LDA    #$0A
            JSR    buffer_char
            JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

 instr_new_line, used in chunk 113.

Uses buffer_char 60 and do_instruction 116.

14.9.2 print

`print` treats the following bytes of z-code as a z-encoded string, and prints it to the output.

189a $\langle \text{Instruction print 189a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `instr_print:`
 SUBROUTINE

 JSR `print_string_literal`
 JMP `do_instruction`

Defines:

`instr_print`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `do_instruction` 116.

14.9.3 print_addr

`print_addr` prints the z-encoded string at the address given by the operand.

189b $\langle \text{Instr print addr 189b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `instr_print_addr:`
 SUBROUTINE

 MOVW `OPERANDO, SCRATCH2`
 JSR `load_address`
 JMP `print_zstring_and_next`

Defines:

`instr_print_addr`, used in chunk 113.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, `load_address` 48b, and `print_zstring_and_next` 163b.

14.9.4 print_char

`print_char` prints the one-byte ASCII character in OPERANDO.

189c $\langle \text{Instruction print char 189c} \rangle \equiv$ (212)
 `instr_print_char:`
 SUBROUTINE

 LDA `OPERANDO`
 JSR `buffer_char`
 JMP `do_instruction`

Defines:

`instr_print_char`, used in chunk 113.

Uses OPERANDO 209, `buffer_char` 60, and `do_instruction` 116.

14.9.5 print_num

print_num prints the 16-bit signed value in OPERANDO as a decimal number.

190a \langle Instruction print num 190a $\rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_print_num:
 SUBROUTINE

```

MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
JSR     print_number
JMP     do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr_print_num, used in chunk 113.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, do_instruction 116, and print_number 107.

14.9.6 print_obj

print_obj prints the short name of the object in the operand.

190b \langle Instruction print obj 190b $\rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_print_obj:
 SUBROUTINE

```

LDA     OPERANDO
JSR     print_obj_in_A
JMP     do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr_print_obj, used in chunk 113.

Uses OPERANDO 209, do_instruction 116, and print_obj_in_A 141.

14.9.7 print_paddr

print_paddr prints the z-encoded string at the packed address in the operand.

190c \langle Instruction print paddr 190c $\rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_print_paddr:
 SUBROUTINE

```

MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2      ; Z_PC2 <- OPERANDO * 2
JSR     load_packed_address

```

; Falls through to print_zstring_and_next

Defines:

instr_print_paddr, used in chunk 113.

Uses MOVW 13a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, load_packed_address 49,
 and print_zstring_and_next 163b.

14.10 Object instructions

14.10.1 clear_attr

`clear_attr` clears the attribute number in the second operand for the object in the first operand. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-anding the inverse of the mask with the attribute word, and storing the result.

```

191  <Instruction clear_attr 191>≡ (212)
      instr_clear_attr:
          SUBROUTINE

              JSR      attr_ptr_and_mask
              LDY      #$01
              LDA      SCRATCH3
              EOR      #$FF
              AND      SCRATCH1
              STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              DEY
              LDA      SCRATCH3+1
              EOR      #$FF
              AND      SCRATCH1+1
              STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_clear_attr`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `SCRATCH3` 209, `attr_ptr_and_mask` 142,
and `do_instruction` 116.

14.10.2 get_child

`get_child` gets the first child object of the object in the operand, stores it into the variable in the next code byte, and branches if it exists (i.e. is not 0).

```

192  <Instruction get child 192>≡ (212)
      instr_get_child:
          LDA      OPERANDO
          JSR      get_object_addr
          LDY      #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET

      push_and_check_obj:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          PHA
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JSR      store_var      ; store in var of next code byte.
          PLA
          ORA      #$00
          BNE      take_branch
          JMP      negated_branch

```

Defines:

push_and_check_obj, used in chunk 200.

Uses OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET 211a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, get_object_addr 136, negated_branch 165a, store_var 127, and take_branch 184b.

14.10.3 get_next_prop

`get_next_prop` gets the next property number for the object in the first operand after the property number in the second operand, and stores it in the variable in the next code byte. If there is no next property, zero is stored.

If the property number in the second operand is zero, the first property number of the object is returned.

193 *<Instruction get next prop 193>*≡ (212)

```

instr_get_next_prop:
    SUBROUTINE

        JSR    get_property_ptr
        LDA    OPERAND1
        BEQ    .store

    .loop:
        JSR    get_property_num
        CMP    OPERAND1
        BEQ    .found
        BCS    .continue
        JMP    store_zero_and_next

    .continue:
        JSR    next_property
        JMP    .loop

    .store:
        JSR    get_property_num
        JMP    store_A_and_next

    .found:
        JSR    next_property
        JMP    .store

```

Defines:

`instr_get_next_prop`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `OPERAND1` 209, `get_property_num` 145a, `get_property_ptr` 144, `next_property` 146, `store_A_and_next` 163a, and `store_zero_and_next` 163a.

14.10.4 get_parent

`get_parent` gets the parent object of the object in the operand, and stores it into the variable in the next code byte.

194 \langle *Instruction get parent 194* $\rangle \equiv$ (212)
 instr_get_parent:
 SUBROUTINE

```

      LDA      OPERANDO
      JSR      get_object_addr
      LDY      #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
      LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      STA      SCRATCH2
      LDA      #$00
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      JSR      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr_get_parent, used in chunk 113.

Uses OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET 211a, OPERANDO 209, SCRATCH2 209, *get_object_addr* 136,
 and *store_and_next* 163a.

14.10.5 get_prop

`get_prop` gets the property number in the second operand for the object in the first operand, and stores the value of the property in the variable in the next code byte. If the object doesn't have the property, the default value for the property is used. If the property length is 1, then the byte is zero-extended and stored. If the property length is 2, then the entire word is stored. If the property length is anything else, we hit a BRK.

First, we check to see if the property is in the object's properties.

195 \langle Instruction *get prop* 195 $\rangle \equiv$ (212) 196 \triangleright

```

instr_get_prop:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR      get_property_ptr

.loop:
    JSR      get_property_num
    CMP      OPERAND1
    BEQ      .found
    BCC      .get_default
    JSR      next_property
    JMP      .loop

```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `OPERAND1` 209, `get_property_num` 145a, `get_property_ptr` 144, and `next_property` 146.

To get the default value, we look in the beginning of the object table, and index into the word containing the property default. Then we store it and we're done.

```

196  <Instruction get prop 195>+≡ (212) <195 197>
      .get_default:
          LDY      #HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET
          CLC
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR
          STA      SCRATCH1
          DEY
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
          STA      SCRATCH1+1          ; table_ptr
          LDA      OPERAND1            ; SCRATCH2 <- table_ptr[2*OPERAND1]
          ASL
          TAY
          DEY
          LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
          STA      SCRATCH2
          DEY
          LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JMP      store_and_next

```

Uses HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET 211a, OPERAND1 209, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209,
and store_and_next 163a.

If the property was found, we load the zero-extended byte or the word, depending on the property length. Also if the property length is not valid, we hit a BRK.

```

197  <Instruction get prop 195>+≡ (212) <196
      .found:
          JSR      get_property_len
          INY
          CMP      #$00
          BEQ      .byte_prop
          CMP      #$01
          BEQ      .word_prop
          JSR      brk

      .word_prop:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1+1
          INY
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1
          MOVW     SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
          JMP      store_and_next

      .byte_prop:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JMP      store_and_next

```

Uses MOVW 13a, SCRATCH1 209, SCRATCH2 209, brk 34c, get_property_len 145b, and store_and_next 163a.

14.10.6 get_prop_addr

`get_prop_addr` gets the Z-address of the property number in the second operand for the object in the first operand, and stores it in the variable in the next code byte. If the object does not have the property, zero is stored.

```

198  <Instruction get prop addr 198>≡ (212)
      instr_get_prop_addr:
          SUBROUTINE

              JSR      get_property_ptr

          .loop:
              JSR      get_property_num
              CMP      OPERAND1
              BEQ      .found
              BCS      .next
              JMP      store_zero_and_next

          .next:
              JSR      next_property
              JMP      .loop

          .found:
              INCW      SCRATCH2
              CLC
              TYA
              ADDAC      SCRATCH2
              SUBW      SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
              JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop_addr`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `ADDAC` 15b, `INCW` 14b, `OPERAND1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `SUBW` 18b, `get_property_num` 145a, `get_property_ptr` 144, `next_property` 146, `store_and_next` 163a, and `store_zero_and_next` 163a.

14.10.7 get_prop_len

`get_prop_len` gets the length of the property data for the property address in the operand, and stores it into the variable in the next code byte. The address in the operand is relative to the start of the header, and points to the property data. The property's one-byte length is stored at that address minus one.

```

199  <Instruction get prop len 199>≡ (212)
      instr_get_prop_len:
          CLC
          LDA      OPERANDO
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      OPERANDO+1
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          LDA      SCRATCH2
          SEC
          SBC      #$01
          STA      SCRATCH2
          BCS      .continue
          DEC      SCRATCH2+1

      .continue:
          LDY      #$00
          JSR      get_property_len
          CLC
          ADC      #$01
          JMP      store_A_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop_len`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `OPERANDO` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `get_property_len` 145b, and `store_A_and_next` 163a.

14.10.8 get_sibling

`get_sibling` gets the next object of the object in the operand (its “sibling”), stores it into the variable in the next code byte, and branches if it exists (i.e. is not 0).

200 $\langle \textit{Instruction get sibling 200} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_get_sibling:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA     OPERANDO
        JSR     get_object_addr
        LDY     #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET
        JMP     push_and_check_obj

```

Defines:

`instr_get_sibling`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET` 211a, `OPERANDO` 209, `get_object_addr` 136,
and `push_and_check_obj` 192.

14.10.9 insert_obj

`insert_obj` inserts the object in `OPERANDO` as a child of the object in `OPERAND1`. It becomes the first child in the object.

```

201  <Instruction insert_obj 201>≡ (212)
      instr_insert_obj:
          JSR      remove_obj          ; remove_obj<OPERANDO>
          LDA      OPERANDO
          JSR      get_object_addr      ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<OPERANDO>
          PSHW     SCRATCH2
          LDY      #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
          LDA      OPERAND1
          STA      (SCRATCH2),Y         ; obj_ptr->parent = OPERAND1
          JSR      get_object_addr      ; dest_ptr = get_object_addr<OPERAND1>
          LDY      #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET ; tmp = dest_ptr->child
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          TAX
          LDA      OPERANDO            ; dest_ptr->child = OPERANDO
          STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          PULW     SCRATCH2
          TXA
          BEQ      .continue
          LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; obj_ptr->sibling = tmp
          STA      (SCRATCH2),Y

      .continue:
          JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_insert_obj`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET` 211a, `OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET` 211a, `OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET` 211a, `OPERANDO` 209, `OPERAND1` 209, `PSHW` 13b, `PULW` 14a, `SCRATCH2` 209, `do_instruction` 116, `get_object_addr` 136, and `remove_obj` 138a.

14.10.10 put_prop

`put_prop` stores the value in `OPERAND2` into property number `OPERAND1` in object `OPERAND0`. The property must exist, and must be of length 1 or 2, otherwise a BRK is hit.

202 $\langle \textit{Instruction put prop 202} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

instr_put_prop:
    SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_property_ptr

    .loop:
        JSR      get_property_num
        CMP      OPERAND1
        BEQ      .found
        BCS      .continue
        JSR      brk

    .continue:
        JSR      next_property
        JMP      .loop

    .found:
        JSR      get_property_len
        INY
        CMP      #$00
        BEQ      .byte_property
        CMP      #$01
        BEQ      .word_property
        JSR      brk

    .word_property:
        LDA      OPERAND2+1
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        INY
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

    .byte_property:
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_put_prop`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `OPERAND1` 209, `OPERAND2` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `brk` 34c, `do_instruction` 116,
`get_property_len` 145b, `get_property_num` 145a, `get_property_ptr` 144,
and `next_property` 146.

14.10.11 remove_obj

`remove_obj` removes the object in the operand from the object tree.

203a $\langle \text{Instruction remove obj 203a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_remove_obj:
        SUBROUTINE

            JSR      remove_obj
            JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_remove_obj`, used in chunk 113.
 Uses `do_instruction` 116 and `remove_obj` 138a.

14.10.12 set_attr

`set_attr` sets the attribute number in the second operand for the object in the first operand. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-oring them together, and storing the result.

203b $\langle \text{Instruction set attr 203b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```

    instr_set_attr:
        SUBROUTINE

            JSR      attr_ptr_and_mask
            LDY      #$01
            LDA      SCRATCH1
            ORA      SCRATCH3
            STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
            DEY
            LDA      SCRATCH1+1
            ORA      SCRATCH3+1
            STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
            JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_set_attr`, used in chunk 113.
 Uses `SCRATCH1` 209, `SCRATCH2` 209, `SCRATCH3` 209, `attr_ptr_and_mask` 142,
 and `do_instruction` 116.

14.11 Other instructions

14.11.1 nop

`nop` does nothing.

204a $\langle \textit{Instruction nop 204a} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_nop:
  SUBROUTINE
```

```
      JMP      do_instruction
```

Defines:

`instr_nop`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `do_instruction` 116.

14.11.2 restart

`restart` restarts the game. This dumps the buffer, and then jumps back to `main`.

204b $\langle \textit{Instruction restart 204b} \rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
instr_restart:
  SUBROUTINE
```

```
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
```

```
      JMP      main
```

Defines:

`instr_restart`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `dump_buffer_with_more` 57 and `main` 29a.

14.11.3 restore

`restore` restores the game. See the section [Restoring the game state](#).

14.11.4 quit

`quit` quits the game by printing “-- END OF SESSION --” and then spinlooping.

```

205  <Instruction quit 205>≡ (212)
      sEndOfSession:
          DC      "-- END OF SESSION --"

      instr_quit:
          SUBROUTINE

          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sEndOfSession, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #20
          JSR      print_ascii_string
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more

      .spinloop:
          JMP      .spinloop

```

Defines:

`instr_quit`, used in chunk 113.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 209, `STOW` 11, `dump_buffer_with_more` 57, and `print_ascii_string` 62b.

14.11.5 save

`save` saves the game. See the section [Saving the game state](#).

14.11.6 sread

`sread` reads a line of input from the keyboard and parses it. See the section [Lexical parsing](#).

Chapter 15

The entire program

```
206a  <boot1.asm 206a>≡
      PROCESSOR 6502

      <Macros 11>
      <defines 207b>

      ORG          $0800

      <BOOT1 21a>

206b  <boot2.asm 206b>≡
      PROCESSOR 6502

      <Macros 11>
      <Apple ROM defines 208>
      <RWTS defines 249>

      main    EQU    $0800

      ORG          $2300

      <BOOT2 25>
      Uses main 29a.
```

207a \langle main.asm 207a $\rangle \equiv$
 PROCESSOR 6502

 \langle Macros 11 \rangle
 \langle defines 207b \rangle

 ORG \$0800

 \langle routines 212 \rangle

207b \langle defines 207b $\rangle \equiv$ (206a 207a)
 \langle Apple ROM defines 208 \rangle
 \langle Program defines 209 \rangle
 \langle Table offsets 211a \rangle
 \langle variable numbers 211b \rangle


```

208  (Apple ROM defines 208)≡ (206b 207b)
    WNDLFT      EQU      $20
    WNDWDTH     EQU      $21
    WNDTOP      EQU      $22
    WNDBTM      EQU      $23
    CH          EQU      $24
    CV          EQU      $25
    IWMDATAPTR  EQU      $26      ; IWM pointer to write disk data to
    IWMSLTNDX   EQU      $2B      ; IWM Slot times 16
    INVFLG      EQU      $32
    PROMPT      EQU      $33
    CSW         EQU      $36      ; 2 bytes

    ; Details https://6502disassembly.com/a2-rom/APPLE2.ROM.html
    IWMSECTOR   EQU      $3D      ; IWM sector to read
    RDSECT_PTR  EQU      $3E      ; 2 bytes
    RANDOM_VAL  EQU      $4E      ; 2 bytes

    INIT        EQU      $FB2F
    VTAB        EQU      $FC22
    HOME        EQU      $FC58
    CLREOL      EQU      $FC9C
    RDKEY       EQU      $FDOC
    GETLN1      EQU      $FD6F
    COUT        EQU      $FDED
    COUT1       EQU      $FDF0
    SETVID      EQU      $FE93
    SETKBD      EQU      $FE89

```

Defines:

CH, used in chunks 57, 72, and 149.
 CLREOL, used in chunks 57, 72, and 149.
 COUT, used in chunks 54 and 58b.
 COUT1, used in chunks 50, 53, and 58a.
 CSW, used in chunks 54 and 58b.
 CV, used in chunk 72.
 GETLN1, used in chunk 74.
 HOME, used in chunk 51.
 INIT, used in chunks 23a and 26a.
 INVFLG, used in chunks 52, 57, 72, and 149.
 IWMDATAPTR, used in chunks 21b and 22d.
 IWMSECTOR, used in chunk 22c.
 IWMSLTNDX, used in chunks 21–23.
 PROMPT, used in chunk 52.
 RDKEY, used in chunks 57, 149, 151a, and 152.
 RDSECT_PTR, used in chunks 21c and 22d.
 SETKBD, used in chunks 23a and 26a.
 SETVID, used in chunks 23a, 26a, and 247c.
 VTAB, used in chunk 72.
 WNDBTM, used in chunks 52 and 57.
 WNDLFT, used in chunk 52.
 WNDTOP, used in chunks 51, 52, 57, and 74.
 WNDWDTH, used in chunks 52, 58a, and 60–62.

209 *(Program defines 209)*≡ (207b)

DEBUG_JUMP	EQU	\$7C	; 3 bytes
SECTORS_PER_TRACK	EQU	\$7F	
CURR_OPCODE	EQU	\$80	
OPERAND_COUNT	EQU	\$81	
OPERAND0	EQU	\$82	; 2 bytes
OPERAND1	EQU	\$84	; 2 bytes
OPERAND2	EQU	\$86	; 2 bytes
OPERAND3	EQU	\$88	; 2 bytes
Z_PC	EQU	\$8A	; 3 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR	EQU	\$8D	; 2 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_VALID	EQU	\$8F	
PAGE_TABLE_INDEX	EQU	\$90	
Z_PC2_H	EQU	\$91	
Z_PC2_HH	EQU	\$92	
Z_PC2_L	EQU	\$93	
ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2	EQU	\$94	; 2 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2	EQU	\$96	
PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2	EQU	\$97	
GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR	EQU	\$98	; 2 bytes
LOCAL_ZVARS	EQU	\$9A	; 30 bytes
AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR	EQU	\$B8	
Z_HEADER_ADDR	EQU	\$BA	; 2 bytes
NUM_IMAGE_PAGES	EQU	\$BC	
FIRST_Z_PAGE	EQU	\$BD	
LAST_Z_PAGE	EQU	\$BF	
PAGE_L_TABLE	EQU	\$C0	; 2 bytes
PAGE_H_TABLE	EQU	\$C2	; 2 bytes
NEXT_PAGE_TABLE	EQU	\$C4	; 2 bytes
PREV_PAGE_TABLE	EQU	\$C6	; 2 bytes
STACK_COUNT	EQU	\$C8	
Z_SP	EQU	\$C9	; 2 bytes
FRAME_Z_SP	EQU	\$CB	; 2 bytes
FRAME_STACK_COUNT	EQU	\$CD	
SHIFT_ALPHABET	EQU	\$CE	
LOCKED_ALPHABET	EQU	\$CF	
ZDECOMPRESS_STATE	EQU	\$D0	
ZCHARS_L	EQU	\$D1	
ZCHARS_H	EQU	\$D2	
ZCHAR_SCRATCH1	EQU	\$D3	; 6 bytes
ZCHAR_SCRATCH2	EQU	\$DA	; 6 bytes
TOKEN_IDX	EQU	\$E0	
INPUT_PTR	EQU	\$E1	
Z_ABBREV_TABLE	EQU	\$E2	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH1	EQU	\$E4	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH2	EQU	\$E6	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH3	EQU	\$E8	; 2 bytes
SIGN_BIT	EQU	\$EA	
BUFF_END	EQU	\$EB	
BUFF_LINE_LEN	EQU	\$EC	

CURR_LINE	EQU	\$ED	
PRINTER_CSW	EQU	\$EE	; 2 bytes
TMP_Z_PC	EQU	\$F0	; 3 bytes
BUFF_AREA	EQU	\$0200	
RWTS	EQU	\$2900	

Defines:

AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR, used in chunks 36a, 43, and 46.
 BUFF_AREA, used in chunks 53, 54, 60–62, 74, 111, 112, 153b, 154a, 156c, and 157c.
 BUFF_END, used in chunks 53, 54, 58a, 60–62, and 74.
 BUFF_LINE_LEN, used in chunks 61b and 62a.
 CURR_DISK_BUFF_ADDR, never used.
 CURR_LINE, used in chunks 51, 57, and 74.
 CURR_OPCODE, used in chunks 116, 119–21, and 123.
 DEBUG_JUMP, used in chunks 26a, 115, and 249.
 FIRST_Z_PAGE, used in chunks 31b, 36b, 44, and 45.
 FRAME_STACK_COUNT, used in chunks 130a and 132–34.
 FRAME_Z_SP, used in chunks 130a and 132–34.
 GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR, used in chunks 35, 125, and 127.
 LAST_Z_PAGE, used in chunks 31b, 36b, 44, and 45.
 LOCAL_ZVARS, used in chunks 125, 127, 131, 132a, 134b, 154b, and 157b.
 LOCKED_ALPHABET, used in chunks 63, 65, 67, 68, 84, 85b, 87a, and 89.
 NEXT_PAGE_TABLE, used in chunks 30, 31a, 36b, and 45.
 NUM_IMAGE_PAGES, used in chunks 33, 36a, 41, and 46.
 OPERAND0, used in chunks 74, 76, 78b, 79a, 82, 118d, 120a, 122, 129, 130b, 132a, 135, 138–40, 142, 144, 164, 169–80, 182–90, 192, 194, and 199–201.
 OPERAND1, used in chunks 76–78, 80, 81, 120b, 142, 169–72, 174–85, 193, 195, 196, 198, 201, and 202.
 OPERAND2, used in chunks 171, 172a, and 202.
 OPERAND3, never used.
 OPERAND_COUNT, used in chunks 116, 118d, 121a, 122, 132a, and 181b.
 PAGE_H_TABLE, used in chunks 30, 31a, 43, 44, and 46.
 PAGE_L_TABLE, used in chunks 30, 31a, 43, 44, and 46.
 PAGE_TABLE_INDEX, used in chunks 41, 43, and 46.
 PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2, used in chunks 43 and 46.
 PREV_PAGE_TABLE, used in chunks 30, 31a, and 45.
 PRINTER_CSW, used in chunks 30, 54, and 58b.
 RWTS, used in chunks 25, 110, 236, and 242.
 SCRATCH1, used in chunks 32b, 33, 43, 46, 81, 84–87, 89, 90, 92, 94–97, 99b, 101, 104, 105, 107, 110–12, 115, 125, 127, 132a, 134, 139–44, 151b, 167c, 168, 175–78, 180b, 181a, 183–85, 191, 196, 197, and 203b.
 SCRATCH2, used in chunks 32b, 33, 37–39, 41, 43–46, 48–50, 57, 62b, 64, 68, 72, 83–86, 93–99, 101, 104, 105, 107, 110–12, 115, 117–25, 127–32, 134–45, 147, 149, 151–55, 157, 158, 163, 164, 166–81, 183–87, 189–92, 194, 196–99, 201–3, and 205.
 SCRATCH3, used in chunks 62b, 66a, 67, 69–71, 76–82, 84, 85, 87c, 89–92, 94–96, 101, 104, 107, 132a, 134, 143a, 155b, 158b, 185b, 191, and 203b.
 SECTORS_PER_TRACK, used in chunks 26a, 110, and 249.
 SHIFT_ALPHABET, used in chunks 63, 65, 67, and 68.
 STACK_COUNT, used in chunks 30, 38, 39, 132b, 133, 154b, and 157b.
 TMP_Z_PC, used in chunk 116.
 ZCHARS_H, used in chunks 64 and 68.
 ZCHARS_L, used in chunks 64 and 68.
 ZCHAR_SCRATCH1, used in chunks 30, 78, 79, 85a, and 86b.
 ZCHAR_SCRATCH2, used in chunks 84, 87–90, 92, 95a, and 96.
 ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR, used in chunks 40, 42, and 71b.
 ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2, used in chunks 46 and 71b.
 ZCODE_PAGE_VALID, used in chunks 30, 40, 42, 46, 71b, 130a, 135, 157b, and 168.
 ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2, used in chunks 30, 43, 46, 49, 68, and 71b.

ZDECOMPRESS_STATE, used in chunks 64, 65, and 68.
 Z.ABBREV_TABLE, used in chunks 35 and 68.
 Z.PC, used in chunks 34d, 40, 41, 43, 71b, 116, 125, 130, 134d, 153c, 157b, and 168.
 Z.PC2_H, used in chunks 46, 48b, 49, 68, and 71b.
 Z.PC2_HH, used in chunks 46, 48b, 49, 68, and 71b.
 Z.PC2_L, used in chunks 46, 48b, 49, 68, and 71b.
 Z.SP, used in chunks 30, 38, 39, 132b, and 133.

211a \langle Table offsets 211a $\rangle \equiv$ (207b)

HEADER_DICT_OFFSET	EQU	\$08	
HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET	EQU	\$0B	
HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE	EQU	\$0E	
HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET	EQU	\$10	
FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET	EQU	\$35	
OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET	EQU	\$04	
OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET	EQU	\$05	
OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET	EQU	\$06	
OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET	EQU	\$07	

Defines:

FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET, used in chunk 137a.
 HEADER_DICT_OFFSET, used in chunk 93.
 HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET, used in chunk 74.
 HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET, used in chunks 137b and 196.
 HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE, used in chunk 155b.
 OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET, used in chunks 138c, 139b, 192, and 201.
 OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET, used in chunks 138a, 139c, 183b, 194, and 201.
 OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET, used in chunks 141 and 144.
 OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET, used in chunks 139b, 140a, 200, and 201.

211b \langle variable numbers 211b $\rangle \equiv$ (207b)

VAR_CURR_ROOM	EQU	\$10
VAR_SCORE	EQU	\$11
VAR_MAX_SCORE	EQU	\$12

Defines:

VAR_CURR_ROOM, used in chunk 72.
 VAR_MAX_SCORE, used in chunk 72.
 VAR_SCORE, used in chunk 72.

211c \langle Internal error string 211c $\rangle \equiv$ (212)

```
sInternalError:
    DC          "ZORK INTERNAL ERROR!"
```

Defines:

sInternalError, never used.

212 $\langle \text{routines } 212 \rangle \equiv$ (207a)
 $\langle \text{main } 29a \rangle$

$\langle \text{Instruction tables } 113 \rangle$

$\langle \text{Do instruction } 116 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Execute instruction } 115 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Handle 0op instructions } 117b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Handle 1op instructions } 118a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions } 120a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Get const byte } 124a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Get const word } 124b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Get var content in A } 126 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Store to var A } 128 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Get var content } 125 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Store and go to next instruction } 163a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Store var } 127 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Handle branch } 165a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction rtrue } 188a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction rfalse } 187b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction print } 189a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Printing a string literal } 71b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction print ret } 186b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction nop } 204a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction ret popped } 187a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction pop } 172b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction new line } 188b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction jz } 184b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction get sibling } 200 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction get child } 192 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction get parent } 194 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction get prop len } 199 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction inc } 173c \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction dec } 174a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Increment variable } 164a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Decrement variable } 164b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction print addr } 189b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction illegal opcode } 162 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction remove obj } 203a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Remove object } 138a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction print obj } 190b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Print object in A } 141 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction ret } 133 \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction jump } 186a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction print paddr } 190c \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Print zstring and go to next instruction } 163b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction load } 169a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction not } 179b \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction jl } 184a \rangle$
 $\langle \text{Instruction jg } 183a \rangle$

<Instruction dec chk 180b>
 <Instruction inc chk 181a>
 <Instruction jin 183b>
 <Instruction test 185a>
 <Instruction or 180a>
 <Instruction and 179a>
 <Instruction test attr 185b>
 <Instruction set attr 203b>
 <Instruction clear attr 191>
 <Instruction store 170b>
 <Instruction insert obj 201>
 <Instruction loadw 169b>
 <Instruction loadb 170a>
 <Instruction get prop 195>
 <Instruction get prop addr 198>
 <Instruction get next prop 193>
 <Instruction add 174b>
 <Instruction sub 178c>
 <Instruction mul 177>
 <Instruction div 175>
 <Instruction mod 176>
 <Instruction je 181b>
 <Instruction call 129>
 <Instruction storew 171>
 <Instruction storeb 172a>
 <Instruction put prop 202>
 <Instruction sread 76>
 <Skip separators 82>
 <Separator checks 83>
 <Get dictionary address 93>
 <Match dictionary word 94>
 <Instruction print char 189c>
 <Instruction print num 190a>
 <Print number 107>
 <Print negative number 108>
 <Instruction random 178a>
 <Instruction push 173b>
 <Instruction pull 173a>
 <mulu16 101>
 <divu16 104>
 <Check sign 99b>
 <Set sign 100>
 <negate 98>
 <Flip sign 99a>
 <Get attribute pointer and mask 142>
 <Get property pointer 144>
 <Get property number 145a>
 <Get property length 145b>
 <Next property 146>
 <Get object address 136>

<cmp16 105b>
<cmput16 105a>
<Push 38>
<Pop 39>
<Get next code byte 40>
<Load address 48b>
<Load packed address 49>
<Get next code word 48a>
<Get next code byte 2 46>
<Set page first 45>
<Find index of page table 44>
<Print zstring 65>
<Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 71a>
<Printing a space 66b>
<Printing a CRLF 70c>
<Shifting alphabets 67>
<Printing an abbreviation 68>
<A mod 3 106>
<A2 table 70a>
<Get alphabet 63>
<Get next zchar 64>
<ASCII to Zchar 84>
<Search nonalpha table 91b>
<Get alphabet for char 86a>
<Z compress 88>
<Instruction restart 204b>
<Locate last RAM page 37>
<Buffer a character 60>
<Dump buffer line 56>
<Dump buffer to printer 54>
<Dump buffer to screen 53>
<Dump buffer with more 57>
<Home 51>
<Print status line 72>
<Output string to console 50>
<Read line 74>
<Reset window 52>
<iob struct 109>
<Do RWTS on sector 110>
<Reading sectors 111>
<Writing sectors 112>
<Do reset window 32a>
<Print ASCII string 62b>
<Save diskette strings 148b>
<Insert save diskette 147>
<Get prompted number from user 149>
<Reinsert game diskette 152>
<Instruction save 153a>
<Copy data to buff 154a>
<Instruction restore 156b>

<Copy data from buff 157c>
<Instruction quit 205>
<Internal error string 211c>
<brk 34c>
<Get random 178b>

HEX	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
HEX	00	FC	19	00	00			

Chapter 16

Defined Chunks

⟨A mod 3 106⟩ [212](#), [106](#)
⟨A2 table 70a⟩ [212](#), [70a](#)
⟨ASCII to Zchar 84⟩ [212](#), [84](#), [85a](#), [85b](#), [86b](#), [87a](#), [87b](#), [87c](#), [89](#), [90a](#), [90b](#), [90c](#),
[91a](#), [92](#)
⟨Apple ROM defines 208⟩ [206b](#), [207b](#), [208](#)
⟨BOOT1 21a⟩ [206a](#), [21a](#), [21b](#), [21c](#), [22a](#), [22b](#), [22c](#), [22d](#), [23a](#), [23b](#), [24a](#), [24b](#)
⟨BOOT2 25⟩ [206b](#), [25](#), [26a](#), [26b](#), [27a](#), [27b](#), [28a](#), [28b](#)
⟨Buffer a character 60⟩ [212](#), [60](#), [61a](#), [61b](#), [62a](#)
⟨Check sign 99b⟩ [212](#), [99b](#)
⟨Copy data from buff 157c⟩ [212](#), [157c](#)
⟨Copy data to buff 154a⟩ [212](#), [154a](#)
⟨Decrement variable 164b⟩ [212](#), [164b](#)
⟨Detach object 139c⟩ [138a](#), [139c](#)
⟨Do RWTS on sector 110⟩ [212](#), [110](#)
⟨Do instruction 116⟩ [212](#), [116](#), [117a](#)
⟨Do reset window 32a⟩ [212](#), [32a](#)
⟨Dump buffer line 56⟩ [212](#), [56](#)
⟨Dump buffer to printer 54⟩ [212](#), [54](#)
⟨Dump buffer to screen 53⟩ [212](#), [53](#)
⟨Dump buffer with more 57⟩ [212](#), [57](#), [58a](#), [58b](#), [59](#)
⟨Execute instruction 115⟩ [212](#), [115](#)
⟨Find index of page table 44⟩ [212](#), [44](#)
⟨Flip sign 99a⟩ [212](#), [99a](#)
⟨Get alphabet 63⟩ [212](#), [63](#)
⟨Get alphabet for char 86a⟩ [212](#), [86a](#)
⟨Get attribute pointer and mask 142⟩ [212](#), [142](#), [143a](#), [143b](#)
⟨Get const byte 124a⟩ [212](#), [124a](#)
⟨Get const word 124b⟩ [212](#), [124b](#)

⟨Get dictionary address 93⟩ [212](#), [93](#)
 ⟨Get next code byte 40⟩ [212](#), [40](#), [41](#), [42](#), [43](#)
 ⟨Get next code byte 2 46⟩ [212](#), [46](#)
 ⟨Get next code word 48a⟩ [212](#), [48a](#)
 ⟨Get next zchar 64⟩ [212](#), [64](#)
 ⟨Get object address 136⟩ [212](#), [136](#), [137a](#), [137b](#)
 ⟨Get prompted number from user 149⟩ [212](#), [149](#)
 ⟨Get property length 145b⟩ [212](#), [145b](#)
 ⟨Get property number 145a⟩ [212](#), [145a](#)
 ⟨Get property pointer 144⟩ [212](#), [144](#)
 ⟨Get random 178b⟩ [212](#), [178b](#)
 ⟨Get var content 125⟩ [212](#), [125](#)
 ⟨Get var content in A 126⟩ [212](#), [126](#)
 ⟨Handle 0op instructions 117b⟩ [212](#), [117b](#)
 ⟨Handle 1op instructions 118a⟩ [212](#), [118a](#), [118b](#), [118c](#), [118d](#), [119a](#), [119b](#)
 ⟨Handle 2op instructions 120a⟩ [212](#), [120a](#), [120b](#), [121a](#), [121b](#), [121c](#)
 ⟨Handle branch 165a⟩ [212](#), [165a](#), [165b](#), [166](#), [167a](#), [167b](#), [167c](#), [168](#)
 ⟨Handle varop instructions 122⟩ [116](#), [122](#), [123](#)
 ⟨Home 51⟩ [212](#), [51](#)
 ⟨Increment variable 164a⟩ [212](#), [164a](#)
 ⟨Insert save diskette 147⟩ [212](#), [147](#), [148a](#), [150a](#), [150b](#), [151a](#), [151b](#)
 ⟨Instruction add 174b⟩ [212](#), [174b](#)
 ⟨Instruction and 179a⟩ [212](#), [179a](#)
 ⟨Instruction call 129⟩ [212](#), [129](#), [130a](#), [130b](#), [130c](#), [131](#), [132a](#), [132b](#)
 ⟨Instruction clear attr 191⟩ [212](#), [191](#)
 ⟨Instruction dec 174a⟩ [212](#), [174a](#)
 ⟨Instruction dec chk 180b⟩ [212](#), [180b](#)
 ⟨Instruction div 175⟩ [212](#), [175](#)
 ⟨Instruction get child 192⟩ [212](#), [192](#)
 ⟨Instruction get next prop 193⟩ [212](#), [193](#)
 ⟨Instruction get parent 194⟩ [212](#), [194](#)
 ⟨Instruction get prop 195⟩ [212](#), [195](#), [196](#), [197](#)
 ⟨Instruction get prop addr 198⟩ [212](#), [198](#)
 ⟨Instruction get prop len 199⟩ [212](#), [199](#)
 ⟨Instruction get sibling 200⟩ [212](#), [200](#)
 ⟨Instruction illegal opcode 162⟩ [212](#), [162](#)
 ⟨Instruction inc 173c⟩ [212](#), [173c](#)
 ⟨Instruction inc chk 181a⟩ [212](#), [181a](#)
 ⟨Instruction insert obj 201⟩ [212](#), [201](#)
 ⟨Instruction je 181b⟩ [212](#), [181b](#), [182a](#), [182b](#), [182c](#)
 ⟨Instruction jg 183a⟩ [212](#), [183a](#)
 ⟨Instruction jin 183b⟩ [212](#), [183b](#)
 ⟨Instruction jl 184a⟩ [212](#), [184a](#)
 ⟨Instruction jump 186a⟩ [212](#), [186a](#)
 ⟨Instruction jz 184b⟩ [212](#), [184b](#)
 ⟨Instruction load 169a⟩ [212](#), [169a](#)

⟨Instruction loadb 170a⟩ 212, [170a](#)
 ⟨Instruction loadw 169b⟩ 212, [169b](#)
 ⟨Instruction mod 176⟩ 212, [176](#)
 ⟨Instruction mul 177⟩ 212, [177](#)
 ⟨Instruction new line 188b⟩ 212, [188b](#)
 ⟨Instruction nop 204a⟩ 212, [204a](#)
 ⟨Instruction not 179b⟩ 212, [179b](#)
 ⟨Instruction or 180a⟩ 212, [180a](#)
 ⟨Instruction pop 172b⟩ 212, [172b](#)
 ⟨Instruction print 189a⟩ 212, [189a](#)
 ⟨Instruction print addr 189b⟩ 212, [189b](#)
 ⟨Instruction print char 189c⟩ 212, [189c](#)
 ⟨Instruction print num 190a⟩ 212, [190a](#)
 ⟨Instruction print obj 190b⟩ 212, [190b](#)
 ⟨Instruction print paddr 190c⟩ 212, [190c](#)
 ⟨Instruction print ret 186b⟩ 212, [186b](#)
 ⟨Instruction pull 173a⟩ 212, [173a](#)
 ⟨Instruction push 173b⟩ 212, [173b](#)
 ⟨Instruction put prop 202⟩ 212, [202](#)
 ⟨Instruction quit 205⟩ 212, [205](#)
 ⟨Instruction random 178a⟩ 212, [178a](#)
 ⟨Instruction remove obj 203a⟩ 212, [203a](#)
 ⟨Instruction restart 204b⟩ 212, [204b](#)
 ⟨Instruction restore 156b⟩ 212, [156b](#), [156c](#), [157a](#), [157b](#), [158a](#), [158b](#), [158c](#), [159a](#),
[159b](#)
 ⟨Instruction ret 133⟩ 212, [133](#), [134a](#), [134b](#), [134c](#), [134d](#), [135](#)
 ⟨Instruction ret popped 187a⟩ 212, [187a](#)
 ⟨Instruction rfalse 187b⟩ 212, [187b](#)
 ⟨Instruction rtrue 188a⟩ 212, [188a](#)
 ⟨Instruction save 153a⟩ 212, [153a](#), [153b](#), [153c](#), [154b](#), [155a](#), [155b](#), [155c](#), [156a](#)
 ⟨Instruction set attr 203b⟩ 212, [203b](#)
 ⟨Instruction sread 76⟩ 212, [76](#), [77a](#), [77b](#), [77c](#), [78a](#), [78b](#), [79a](#), [79b](#), [80](#), [81](#)
 ⟨Instruction store 170b⟩ 212, [170b](#)
 ⟨Instruction storeb 172a⟩ 212, [172a](#)
 ⟨Instruction storew 171⟩ 212, [171](#)
 ⟨Instruction sub 178c⟩ 212, [178c](#)
 ⟨Instruction tables 113⟩ 212, [113](#)
 ⟨Instruction test 185a⟩ 212, [185a](#)
 ⟨Instruction test attr 185b⟩ 212, [185b](#)
 ⟨Internal error string 211c⟩ 212, [211c](#)
 ⟨Load address 48b⟩ 212, [48b](#)
 ⟨Load packed address 49⟩ 212, [49](#)
 ⟨Locate last RAM page 37⟩ 212, [37](#)
 ⟨Macros 11⟩ 206a, 206b, 207a, [11](#), [12a](#), [12b](#), [13a](#), [13b](#), [13c](#), [14a](#), [14b](#), [15a](#), [15b](#),
[16a](#), [16b](#), [16c](#), [17a](#), [17b](#), [18a](#), [18b](#), [18c](#), [19](#)
 ⟨Match dictionary word 94⟩ 212, [94](#), [95a](#), [95b](#), [96](#), [97a](#), [97b](#)

⟨Next property 146⟩ 212, [146](#)
 ⟨Output string to console 50⟩ 212, [50](#)
 ⟨Pop 39⟩ 212, [39](#)
 ⟨Print ASCII string 62b⟩ 212, [62b](#)
 ⟨Print negative number 108⟩ 212, [108](#)
 ⟨Print number 107⟩ 212, [107](#)
 ⟨Print object in A 141⟩ 212, [141](#)
 ⟨Print status line 72⟩ 212, [72](#)
 ⟨Print the zchar 69a⟩ 65, [69a](#), [69b](#), [70b](#)
 ⟨Print zstring 65⟩ 212, [65](#), [66a](#)
 ⟨Print zstring and go to next instruction 163b⟩ 212, [163b](#)
 ⟨Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 71a⟩ 212, [71a](#)
 ⟨Printing a CRLF 70c⟩ 212, [70c](#)
 ⟨Printing a space 66b⟩ 212, [66b](#)
 ⟨Printing a string literal 71b⟩ 212, [71b](#)
 ⟨Printing an abbreviation 68⟩ 212, [68](#)
 ⟨Program defines 209⟩ 207b, [209](#)
 ⟨Push 38⟩ 212, [38](#)
 ⟨RWTS Arm move delay 231⟩ 250, [231](#)
 ⟨RWTS Arm move delay tables 232a⟩ 250, [232a](#)
 ⟨RWTS Clobber language card 247c⟩ 250, [247c](#)
 ⟨RWTS Disk full error patch 248⟩ 250, [248](#)
 ⟨RWTS Entry point 236⟩ 250, [236](#)
 ⟨RWTS Format disk 243⟩ 250, [243](#)
 ⟨RWTS Format track 245⟩ 250, [245](#)
 ⟨RWTS Patch 2 247e⟩ 250, [247e](#)
 ⟨RWTS Physical sector numbers 247b⟩ 250, [247b](#)
 ⟨RWTS Postnibble routine 225b⟩ 250, [225b](#)
 ⟨RWTS Prenibble routine 221⟩ 250, [221](#)
 ⟨RWTS Primary buffer 233a⟩ 250, [233a](#)
 ⟨RWTS Read address 228⟩ 250, [228](#)
 ⟨RWTS Read routine 226⟩ 250, [226](#)
 ⟨RWTS Read translate table 232d⟩ 250, [232d](#)
 ⟨RWTS Secondary buffer 233b⟩ 250, [233b](#)
 ⟨RWTS Sector flags 247a⟩ 250, [247a](#)
 ⟨RWTS Seek absolute 230⟩ 250, [230](#)
 ⟨RWTS Slot X to Y 241b⟩ 250, [241b](#)
 ⟨RWTS Unused area 232c⟩ 250, [232c](#)
 ⟨RWTS Unused area 2 235b⟩ 250, [235b](#)
 ⟨RWTS Write address header 234⟩ 250, [234](#)
 ⟨RWTS Write address header bytes 235a⟩ 250, [235a](#)
 ⟨RWTS Write bytes 225a⟩ 250, [225a](#)
 ⟨RWTS Write routine 223⟩ 250, [223](#)
 ⟨RWTS Write translate table 232b⟩ 250, [232b](#)
 ⟨RWTS Zero patch 247d⟩ 250, [247d](#)
 ⟨RWTS defines 249⟩ 206b, [249](#)

⟨*RWTS move arm* [241a](#)⟩ [250](#), [241a](#)
 ⟨*RWTS routines* [250](#)⟩ [25](#), [250](#)
 ⟨*RWTS seek track* [240](#)⟩ [250](#), [240](#)
 ⟨*RWTS set track* [242](#)⟩ [250](#), [242](#)
 ⟨*Read line* [74](#)⟩ [212](#), [74](#)
 ⟨*Reading sectors* [111](#)⟩ [212](#), [111](#)
 ⟨*Reinsert game diskette* [152](#)⟩ [212](#), [152](#)
 ⟨*Remove object* [138a](#)⟩ [212](#), [138a](#), [138b](#), [138c](#), [139a](#), [139b](#), [140a](#), [140b](#)
 ⟨*Reset window* [52](#)⟩ [212](#), [52](#)
 ⟨*Save diskette strings* [148b](#)⟩ [212](#), [148b](#)
 ⟨*Search nonalpha table* [91b](#)⟩ [212](#), [91b](#)
 ⟨*Separator checks* [83](#)⟩ [212](#), [83](#)
 ⟨*Set page first* [45](#)⟩ [212](#), [45](#)
 ⟨*Set sign* [100](#)⟩ [212](#), [100](#)
 ⟨*Shifting alphabets* [67](#)⟩ [212](#), [67](#)
 ⟨*Skip separators* [82](#)⟩ [212](#), [82](#)
 ⟨*Store and go to next instruction* [163a](#)⟩ [212](#), [163a](#)
 ⟨*Store to var A* [128](#)⟩ [212](#), [128](#)
 ⟨*Store var* [127](#)⟩ [212](#), [127](#)
 ⟨*Table offsets* [211a](#)⟩ [207b](#), [211a](#)
 ⟨*Writing sectors* [112](#)⟩ [212](#), [112](#)
 ⟨*Z compress* [88](#)⟩ [212](#), [88](#)
 ⟨*boot1.asm* [206a](#)⟩ [206a](#)
 ⟨*boot2.asm* [206b](#)⟩ [206b](#)
 ⟨*brk* [34c](#)⟩ [212](#), [34c](#)
 ⟨*cmp16* [105b](#)⟩ [212](#), [105b](#)
 ⟨*cmpl16* [105a](#)⟩ [212](#), [105a](#)
 ⟨*defines* [207b](#)⟩ [206a](#), [207a](#), [207b](#)
 ⟨*die* [34b](#)⟩ [29a](#), [34b](#)
 ⟨*divu16* [104](#)⟩ [212](#), [104](#)
 ⟨*iob struct* [109](#)⟩ [212](#), [109](#)
 ⟨*main* [29a](#)⟩ [212](#), [29a](#), [29b](#), [30](#), [31a](#), [31b](#), [31c](#), [32b](#), [33](#), [34a](#), [34d](#), [35](#), [36a](#), [36b](#)
 ⟨*main.asm* [207a](#)⟩ [207a](#)
 ⟨*mulu16* [101](#)⟩ [212](#), [101](#)
 ⟨*negate* [98](#)⟩ [212](#), [98](#)
 ⟨*routines* [212](#)⟩ [207a](#), [212](#)
 ⟨*trace of divu16* [103](#)⟩ [103](#)
 ⟨*variable numbers* [211b](#)⟩ [207b](#), [211b](#)

Chapter 17

Appendix: RWTs

Part of DOS within BOOT2, and presented without comment. Commented source code can be seen at [cmosher01's annotated Apple II source repository](#).

```
221  <RWTS Prenibble routine 221>≡ (250)
      PRENIBBLE:
          ; Converts 256 bytes of data to 342 6-bit nibbles.
          SUBROUTINE

          LDX    #$00
          LDY    #$02

      .loop1:
          DEY
          LDA     (PTR2BUF),Y
          LSR
          ROL     SECONDARY_BUFF,X
          LSR
          ROL     SECONDARY_BUFF,X
          STA     PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
          INX
          CPX     #$56
          BCC     .loop1
          LDX     #$00
          TYA
          BNE     .loop1
          LDX     #$55

      .loop2:
          LDA     SECONDARY_BUFF,X
          AND     #$3F
          STA     SECONDARY_BUFF,X
          DEX
```

August 4, 2024

main.nw 222

BPL .loop2
RTS

Defines:

PRENIBBLE, used in chunk 236.

Uses PRIMARY_BUFF 233a and SECONDARY_BUFF 233b.

223 *(RWTS Write routine 223)*≡ (250)

```

WRITE:
    ; Writes a sector to disk.
    SUBROUTINE

    SEC
    STX     RWTS_SCRATCH2
    STX     SLOTPG6
    LDA     Q6H,X
    LDA     Q7L,X
    BMI     .protected
    LDA     SECONDARY_BUFF
    STA     RWTS_SCRATCH
    LDA     #$FF
    STA     Q7H,X
    ORA     Q6L,X
    PHA
    PLA
    NOP
    LDY     #$04

.write_4_ff:
    PHA
    PLA
    JSR     WRITE2
    DEY
    BNE     .write_4_ff

    LDA     #$D5
    JSR     WRITE1
    LDA     #$AA
    JSR     WRITE1
    LDA     #$AD
    JSR     WRITE1
    TYA
    LDY     #$56
    BNE     .do_eor

.get_nibble:
    LDA     SECONDARY_BUFF,Y

.do_eor:
    EOR     SECONDARY_BUFF-1,Y
    TAX
    LDA     WRITE_XLAT_TABLE,X
    LDY     RWTS_SCRATCH2
    STA     Q6H,X
    LDA     Q6L,X
    DEY
    BNE     .get_nibble

```



```
        LDA    RWTS_SCRATCH
        NOP

.second_eor:
        EOR     PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
        TAX
        LDA     WRITE_XLAT_TABLE,X
        LDX     SLOT_PG6
        STA     Q6H,X
        LDA     Q6L,X
        LDA     PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
        INY
        BNE     .second_eor

        TAX
        LDA     WRITE_XLAT_TABLE,X
        LDX     RWTS_SCRATCH2
        JSR     WRITE3
        LDA     #$DE
        JSR     WRITE1
        LDA     #$AA
        JSR     WRITE1
        LDA     #$EB
        JSR     WRITE1
        LDA     #$FF
        JSR     WRITE1
        LDA     Q7L,X

.protected:
        LDA     Q6L,X
        RTS
```

Defines:

WRITE, used in chunks 236 and 245.

Uses PRIMARY_BUFF 233a, SECONDARY_BUFF 233b, WRITE1 225a, WRITE2 225a, WRITE3 225a,
and WRITE_XLAT_TABLE 232b.

225a \langle *RWTS Write bytes 225a* $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

WRITE1:
    SUBROUTINE

    CLC

WRITE2:
    SUBROUTINE

    PHA
    PLA

WRITE3:
    SUBROUTINE

    STA     Q6H,X
    ORA     Q6L,X
    RTS

```

Defines:

WRITE1, used in chunk 223.
 WRITE2, used in chunk 223.
 WRITE3, used in chunk 223.

225b \langle *RWTS Postnibble routine 225b* $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

POSTNIBBLE:
    ; Converts nibbled data to regular data in PTR2BUF.
    SUBROUTINE

    LDY     #$00

.loop:
    LDX     #$56

.loop2:
    DEX
    BMI     .loop
    LDA     PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
    LSR     SECONDARY_BUFF,X
    ROL
    LSR     SECONDARY_BUFF,X
    ROL
    STA     (PTR2BUF),Y
    INY
    CPY     RWTS_SCRATCH
    BNE     .loop2
    RTS

```

Defines:

POSTNIBBLE, used in chunk 236.
 Uses PRIMARY_BUFF 233a and SECONDARY_BUFF 233b.

```

226  <RWTS Read routine 226>≡ (250)
      READ:
          ; Reads a sector from disk.
          SUBROUTINE

          LDY    #$20

      .await_prologue:
          DEY
          BEQ     read_error

      .await_prologue_d5:
          LDA     Q6L,X
          BPL     .await_prologue_d5

      .check_for_d5:
          EOR     #$D5
          BNE     .await_prologue
          NOP

      .await_prologue_aa:
          LDA     Q6L,X
          BPL     .await_prologue_aa
          CMP     #$AA
          BNE     .check_for_d5
          LDY     #$56

      .await_prologue_ad:
          LDA     Q6L,X
          BPL     .await_prologue_ad
          CMP     #$AD
          BNE     .check_for_d5
          LDA     #$00

      .loop:
          DEY
          STY     RWTS_SCRATCH

      .await_byte1:
          LDY     Q6L,X
          BPL     .await_byte1
          EOR     ARM_MOVE_DELAY,Y
          LDY     RWTS_SCRATCH
          STA     SECONDARY_BUFF,Y
          BNE     .loop

      .save_index:
          STY     RWTS_SCRATCH

      .await_byte2:

```

```
LDY    Q6L,X
BPL     .await_byte2
EOR     ARM_MOVE_DELAY,Y
LDY     RWTS_SCRATCH
STA     PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
INY
BNE     .save_index

.read_checksum:
LDY     Q6L,X
BPL     .read_checksum
CMP     ARM_MOVE_DELAY,Y
BNE     read_error

.await_epilogue_de:
LDA     Q6L,X
BPL     .await_epilogue_de
CMP     #$DE
BNE     read_error
NOP

.await_epilogue_aa:
LDA     Q6L,X
BPL     .await_epilogue_aa
CMP     #$AA
BEQ     good_read

read_error:
SEC
RTS
```

Defines:

READ, used in chunks 236, 243, and 245.

read_error, used in chunk 228.

Uses ARM_MOVE_DELAY 231, PRIMARY_BUFF 233a, SECONDARY_BUFF 233b, and good_read 228.

```

228  <RWTS Read address 228>≡ (250)
      READ_ADDR:
          ; Reads an address header from disk.
          SUBROUTINE

          LDY    #$FC
          STY    RWTS_SCRATCH

      .await_prologue:
          INY
          BNE    .await_prologue_d5
          INC    RWTS_SCRATCH
          BEQ    read_error

      .await_prologue_d5:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .await_prologue_d5

      .check_for_d5:
          CMP    #$D5
          BNE    .await_prologue
          NOP

      .await_prologue_aa:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .await_prologue_aa
          CMP    #$AA
          BNE    .check_for_d5
          LDY    #$03

      .await_prologue_96:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .await_prologue_96
          CMP    #$96
          BNE    .check_for_d5
          LDA    #$00

      .calc_checksum:
          STA    RWTS_SCRATCH2

      .get_header:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .get_header
          ROL
          STA    RWTS_SCRATCH

      .read_header:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .read_header
          AND    RWTS_SCRATCH

```

```
        STA     CKSUM_ON_DISK,Y
        EOR     RWTS_SCRATCH2
        DEY
        BPL     .calc_checksum
        TAY
        BNE     read_error

.await_epilogue_de:
        LDA     Q6L,X
        BPL     .await_epilogue_de
        CMP     #$DE
        BNE     read_error
        NOP

.await_epilogue_aa:
        LDA     Q6L,X
        BPL     .await_epilogue_aa
        CMP     #$AA
        BNE     read_error

good_read:
        CLC
        RTS
```

Defines:

 READ_ADDR, used in chunks 236, 243, and 245.

 good_read, used in chunks 43, 46, and 226.

Uses read_error 226.

```

230  <RWTS Seek absolute 230>≡ (250)
      SEEKABS:
          ; Moves disk arm to a given half-track.
          SUBROUTINE

          STX     SLOT16
          STA     DEST_TRACK
          CMP     CURR_TRACK
          BEQ     entry_off_end
          LDA     #$00
          STA     RWTS_SCRATCH

      .save_curr_track:
          LDA     CURR_TRACK
          STA     RWTS_SCRATCH2
          SEC
          SBC     DEST_TRACK
          BEQ     .at_destination
          BCS     .move_down
          EOR     #$FF
          INC     CURR_TRACK
          BCC     .check_delay_index

      .move_down:
          ADC     #$FE
          DEC     CURR_TRACK

      .check_delay_index:
          CMP     RWTS_SCRATCH
          BCC     .check_within_steps
          LDA     RWTS_SCRATCH

      .check_within_steps:
          CMP     #$0C
          BCS     .turn_on
          TAY

      .turn_on:
          SEC
          JSR     ON_OR_OFF
          LDA     ON_TABLE,Y
          JSR     ARM_MOVE_DELAY
          LDA     RWTS_SCRATCH2
          CLC
          JSR     ENTRY_OFF
          LDA     OFF_TABLE,Y
          JSR     ARM_MOVE_DELAY
          INC     RWTS_SCRATCH
          BNE     .save_curr_track

```

```

.at_destination:
    JSR      ARM_MOVE_DELAY
    CLC

ON_OR_OFF:
    LDA      CURR_TRACK

ENTRY_OFF:
    AND      #$03
    ROL
    ORA      SLOT16
    TAX
    LDA      PHASEOFF,X
    LDX      SLOT16

entry_off_end:
    RTS

garbage:
    HEX      AA AO AO

```

Defines:

ENTRY_OFF, never used.
ON_OR_OFF, never used.
SEEKABS, used in chunk 241a.
entry_off_end, never used.

Uses ARM_MOVE_DELAY 231, OFF_TABLE 232a, and ON_TABLE 232a.

231 \langle RWTS Arm move delay 231 $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

ARM_MOVE_DELAY:
    ; Delays during arm movement.
    SUBROUTINE

    LDX      #$11

.delay1:
    DEX
    BNE      .delay1
    INC      MOTOR_TIME
    BNE      .delay2
    INC      MOTOR_TIME+1

.delay2:
    SEC
    SBC      #$01
    BNE      ARM_MOVE_DELAY
    RTS

```

Defines:

ARM_MOVE_DELAY, used in chunks 226, 230, and 236.

232a \langle *RWTS Arm move delay tables 232a* $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

ON_TABLE:

HEX 01 30 28 24 20 1E 1D 1C 1C 1C 1C 1C

OFF_TABLE:

HEX 70 2C 26 22 1F 1E 1D 1C 1C 1C 1C 1C

Defines:

OFF_TABLE, used in chunk 230.

ON_TABLE, used in chunk 230.

232b \langle *RWTS Write translate table 232b* $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

WRITE_XLAT_TABLE:

HEX 96 97 9A 9B 9D 9E 9F A6 A7 AB AC AD AE AF B2 B3

HEX B4 B5 B6 B7 B9 BA BB BC BD BE BF CB CD CE CF D3

HEX D6 D7 D9 DA DB DC DD DE DF E5 E6 E7 E9 EA EB EC

HEX ED EE EF F2 F3 F4 F5 F6 F7 F9 FA FB FC FD FE FF

Defines:

WRITE_XLAT_TABLE, used in chunk 223.

232c \langle *RWTS Unused area 232c* $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

HEX B3 B3 A0 E0 B3 C3 C5 B3 A0 E0 B3 C3 C5 B3 A0 E0

HEX B3 B3 C5 AA A0 82 B3 B3 C5 AA A0 82 C5 B3 B3 AA

HEX 88 82 C5 B3 B3 AA 88 82 C5 C4 B3 B0 88

232d \langle *RWTS Read translate table 232d* $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

READ_XLAT_TABLE:

HEX 00 01 98 99 02 03 9C 04 05 06 A0 A1 A2 A3 A4 A5

HEX 07 08 A8 A9 AA 09 0A 0B 0C 0D B0 B1 0E 0F 10 11

HEX 12 13 B8 14 15 16 17 18 19 1A C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5

HEX C6 C7 C8 C9 CA 1B CC 1C 1D 1E D0 D1 D2 1F D4 D5

HEX 20 21 D8 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 E0 E1 E2 E3 E4 29

HEX 2A 2B E8 2C 2D 2E 2F 30 31 32 F0 F1 33 34 35 36

HEX 37 38 F8 39 3A 3B 3C 3D 3E 3F

Defines:

READ_XLAT_TABLE, never used.

233a $\langle \text{RWTS Primary buffer } 233a \rangle \equiv$ (250)

```
PRIMARY_BUFF:
; Initially contains this garbage.
HEX      00 38 11 0A 08 20 20 0E 18 06 02 31 02 09 08 27
HEX      22 00 12 0A 0A 04 00 00 03 2A 00 04 00 00 22 08
HEX      10 28 12 02 00 02 08 11 0A 08 02 28 11 01 39 22
HEX      31 01 05 18 20 28 02 10 06 02 09 02 05 2C 10 00
HEX      08 2E 00 05 02 28 18 02 30 23 02 20 32 04 11 02
HEX      14 02 08 09 12 20 0E 2F 23 30 2F 23 30 0C 17 2A
HEX      3F 27 23 30 37 23 30 12 1A 08 30 0F 08 30 0F 27
HEX      23 30 37 23 30 3A 22 34 3C 2A 35 08 35 0F 2A 2A
HEX      08 35 0F 2A 25 08 35 0F 29 10 08 31 0F 29 11 08
HEX      31 0F 29 0F 08 31 0F 29 10 11 11 11 0F 12 12 01
HEX      0F 27 23 30 2F 23 30 1A 02 2A 08 35 0F 2A 37 08
HEX      35 0F 2A 2A 08 35 0F 2A 3A 08 35 0F 06 2F 23 30
HEX      2F 23 30 18 12 12 01 0F 27 23 30 37 23 30 1A 3A
HEX      3A 3A 02 2A 3A 3A 12 1A 27 23 30 37 23 30 18 22
HEX      29 3A 24 28 25 22 25 3A 24 28 25 22 25 24 24 32
HEX      25 34 25 24 24 32 25 34 25 24 28 32 28 29 21 29
```

Defines:

PRIMARY_BUFF, used in chunks **221**, **223**, **225b**, **226**, and **243**.

233b $\langle \text{RWTS Secondary buffer } 233b \rangle \equiv$ (250)

```
SECONDARY_BUFF:
; Initially contains this garbage.
HEX      00 E1 45 28 21 82 80 38 62 19 0B C5 0B 24 21 9C
HEX      88 00 48 28 2B 10 00 03 0C A9 01 10 01 00 88 22
HEX      40 A0 48 09 01 08 21 44 29 22 08 A0 45 06 E4 8A
HEX      C4 06 16 60 80 A0 09 40 18 0A 24 0A 16 B0 43 00
HEX      20 BB 00 14 08 A0 60 0A C0 8F 0A 83 CA 11 44 08
HEX      51 0A 20 26 4A 80
```

Defines:

SECONDARY_BUFF, used in chunks **221**, **223**, **225b**, and **226**.

234 \langle RWTS Write address header 234 $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

WRITE_ADDR_HDR:
    SUBROUTINE

    SEC
    LDA     Q6H,X
    LDA     Q7L,X
    BMI     .set_read_mode
    LDA     #$FF
    STA     Q7H,X
    CMP     Q6L,X
    PHA
    PLA

.write_sync:
    JSR     WRITE_ADDR_RET
    JSR     WRITE_ADDR_RET
    STA     Q6H,X
    CMP     Q6L,X
    NOP
    DEY
    BNE     .write_sync
    LDA     #$D5
    JSR     WRITE_BYTE3
    LDA     #$AA
    JSR     WRITE_BYTE3
    LDA     #$96
    JSR     WRITE_BYTE3
    LDA     FORMAT_VOLUME
    JSR     WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE
    LDA     FORMAT_TRACK
    JSR     WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE
    LDA     FORMAT_SECTOR
    JSR     WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE
    LDA     FORMAT_VOLUME
    EOR     FORMAT_TRACK
    EOR     FORMAT_SECTOR
    PHA
    LSR
    ORA     PTR2BUF
    STA     Q6H,X
    LDA     Q6L,X
    PLA
    ORA     #$AA
    JSR     WRITE_BYTE2
    LDA     #$DE
    JSR     WRITE_BYTE3
    LDA     #$AA
    JSR     WRITE_BYTE3
    LDA     #$EB

```

```

        JSR      WRITE_BYTE3
        CLC

.set_read_mode:
        LDA      Q7L,X
        LDA      Q6L,X

WRITE_ADDR_RET:
        RTS

Defines:
        WRITE_ADDR_HDR, used in chunk 245.
        Uses WRITE_BYTE2 235a, WRITE_BYTE3 235a, and WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE 235a.

```

235a \langle RWTS Write address header bytes 235a $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

        WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE:
        PHA
        LSR
        ORA      PTR2BUF
        STA      Q6H,X
        CMP      Q6L,X
        PLA
        NOP
        NOP
        NOP
        ORA      #$AA

```

```

        WRITE_BYTE2:
        NOP

```

```

        WRITE_BYTE3:
        NOP
        PHA
        PLA
        STA      Q6H,X
        CMP      Q6L,X
        RTS

```

Defines:

```

        WRITE_BYTE2, used in chunk 234.
        WRITE_BYTE3, used in chunk 234.
        WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE, used in chunk 234.

```

235b \langle RWTS Unused area 2 235b $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

        HEX      88 A5 E8 91 A0 94 88 96
        HEX      E8 91 A0 94 88 96 91 91
        HEX      C8 94 D0 96 91 91 C8 94
        HEX      D0 96 91 A3 C8 A0 A5 85
        HEX      A4

```

```

236  <RWTS Entry point 236>≡ (250)
      RWTS_entry:
          ; RWTS entry point.
          SUBROUTINE

              STY      PTR2IOB
              STA      PTR2IOB+1
              LDY      #$02
              STY      RECALIBCNT
              LDY      #$04
              STY      RESEEKCNT
              LDY      #$01
              LDA      (PTR2IOB),Y
              TAX
              LDY      #$0F
              CMP      (PTR2IOB),Y
              BEQ      .sameslot
              TXA
              PHA
              LDA      (PTR2IOB),Y
              TAX
              PLA
              PHA
              STA      (PTR2IOB),Y
              LDA      Q7L,X
        .ck_spin:
              LDY      #$08
              LDA      Q6L,X
        .check_change:
              CMP      Q6L,X
              BNE      .ck_spin
              DEY
              BNE      .check_change
              PLA
              TAX
        .sameslot:
              LDA      Q7L,X
              LDA      Q6L,X
              LDY      #$08
        .strobe_again:
              LDA      Q6L,X
              PHA
              PLA
              PHA
              PLA
              STX      SLOTPG5
              CMP      Q6L,X
              BNE      .done_test
              DEY
              BNE      .strobe_again

```

```

.done_test:
    PHP
    LDA    MOTORON,X
    LDY    #$06
.move_ptrs:
    LDA    (PTR2IOB),Y
    STA    PTR2DCT-6,Y
    INY
    CPY    #$0A
    BNE    .move_ptrs
    LDY    #$03
    LDA    (PTR2DCT),Y
    STA    MOTOR_TIME+1
    LDY    #$02
    LDA    (PTR2IOB),Y
    LDY    #$10
    CMP    (PTR2IOB),Y
    BEQ    .save_drive
    STA    (PTR2IOB),Y
    PLP
    LDY    #$00
    PHP
.save_drive:
    ROR
    BCC    .use_drive2
    LDA    DRVOEN,X
    BCS    .use_drive1
.use_drive2:
    LDA    DRV1EN,X
.use_drive1:
    ROR    ZPAGE_DRIVE
    PLP
    PHP
    BNE    .was_on
    LDY    #$07
.wait_for_motor:
    JSR    ARM_MOVE_DELAY
    DEY
    BNE    .wait_for_motor
    LDX    SLOTPG5
.was_on:
    LDY    #$04
    LDA    (PTR2IOB),Y
    JSR    rwts_seek_track
    PLP
    BNE    .begin_cmd
    LDY    MOTOR_TIME+1
    BPL    .begin_cmd
.on_time_delay:
    LDY    #$12

```

```

.on_time_delay_inner:
    DEY
    BNE      .on_time_delay_inner
    INC      MOTOR_TIME
    BNE      .on_time_delay
    INC      MOTOR_TIME+1
    BNE      .on_time_delay
.begin_cmd:
    LDY      #$0C
    LDA      (PTR2IOB),Y
    BEQ      .was_seek
    CMP      #$04
    BEQ      .was_format
    ROR
    PHP
    BCS      .reset_cnt
    JSR      PRENIBBLE
.reset_cnt:
    LDY      #$30
    STY      READ_CTR
.set_x_slot:
    LDX      SLOTPG5
    JSR      READ_ADDR
    BCC      .addr_read_good
.reduce_read_cnt:
    DEC      READ_CTR
    BPL      .set_x_slot
.do_recalibrate:
    LDA      CURR_TRACK
    PHA
    LDA      #$60
    JSR      rwts_set_track
    DEC      RECALIBCNT
    BEQ      .drive_err
    LDA      #$04
    STA      RESEKCNT
    LDA      #$00
    JSR      rwts_seek_track
    PLA
.reseek:
    JSR      rwts_seek_track
    JMP      .reset_cnt
.addr_read_good:
    LDY      TRACK_ON_DISK
    CPY      CURR_TRACK
    BEQ      .found_track
    LDA      CURR_TRACK
    PHA
    TYA
    JSR      rwts_set_track

```

```

        PLA
        DEC      RESEKCNT
        BNE      .reseek
        BEQ      .do_recalibrate
.drive_err:
        PLA
        LDA      #$40
.to_err_rwts:
        PLP
        JMP      .rwts_err
.was_seek:
        BEQ      .rwts_exit
.was_format:
        JMP      rwts_format
.found_track:
        LDY      #$03
        LDA      (PTR2IOB),Y
        PHA
        LDA      CHECKSUM_DISK
        LDY      #$0E
        STA      (PTR2IOB),Y
        PLA
        BEQ      .found_volume
        CMP      CHECKSUM_DISK
        BEQ      .found_volume
        LDA      #$20
        BNE      .to_err_rwts
.found_volume:
        LDY      #$05
        LDA      (PTR2IOB),Y
        TAY
        LDA      PHYSECTOR,Y
        CMP      SECTOR_DSK
        BNE      .reduce_read_cnt
        PLP
        BCC      .write
        JSR      READ
        PHP
        BCS      .reduce_read_cnt
        PLP
        LDX      #$00
        STX      RWTS_SCRATCH
        JSR      POSTNIBBLE
        LDX      SLOT5
.rwts_exit:
        CLC
        HEX      24      ; BIT instruction skips next SEC
.rwts_err:
        SEC
        LDY      #$0D

```



```

        STA      (PTR2IOB),Y
        LDA      MOTOROFF,X
        RTS
.write:
        JSR      WRITE
        BCC      .rwts_exit
        LDA      #$10
        BCS      .rwts_err

```

Defines:

 RWTS.entry, used in chunk 25.

Uses ARM_MOVE_DELAY 231, PHYSECTOR 247b, POSTNIBBLE 225b, PRENIBBLE 221, READ 226,
 READ_ADDR 228, RWTS 209, WRITE 223, rwts_format 243, rwts_seek_track 240,
 rwts_set_track 242, and save_drive 148b.

240 $\langle RWTS\ seek\ track\ 240 \rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

rwts_seek_track:
    ; Determines drive type and moves disk arm
    ; to desired track.
    SUBROUTINE

    PHA
    LDY      #$01
    LDA      (PTR2DCT),Y
    ROR
    PLA
    BCC      rwts_move_arm
    ASL
    JSR      rwts_move_arm
    LSR      CURR_TRACK
    RTS

```

Defines:

 rwts_seek_track, used in chunks 236 and 243.

Uses rwts_move_arm 241a.

241a $\langle RWTS \text{ move arm } 241a \rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

rwts_move_arm:
    ; Moves disk arm to desired track.
    SUBROUTINE

    STA     DEST_TRACK
    JSR     rwts_slot_x_to_y
    LDA     CURR_TRACK,Y
    BIT     ZPAGE_DRIVE
    BMI     .set_curr_track
    LDA     RESEEKCNT,Y
.set_curr_track:
    STA     CURR_TRACK
    LDA     DEST_TRACK
    BIT     ZPAGE_DRIVE
    BMI     .using_drive_1
    STA     RESEEKCNT,Y
    BPL     .using_drive_2
.using_drive_1:
    STA     CURR_TRACK,Y
.using_drive_2:
    JMP     SEEKABS

```

Defines:

rwts_move_arm, used in chunk 240.

Uses SEEKABS 230 and rwts_slot_x_to_y 241b.

241b $\langle RWTS \text{ Slot } X \text{ to } Y \text{ } 241b \rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

rwts_slot_x_to_y:
    ; Moves slot*16 in X to slot in Y.
    TXA
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    TAY
    RTS

```

Defines:

rwts_slot_x_to_y, used in chunks 241a and 242.

242 $\langle RWTs \text{ set track } 242 \rangle \equiv$ (250)

```

    rwts_set_track:
        ; Sets track for RWTs.
        SUBROUTINE

        PHA
        LDY    #$02
        LDA    (PTR2IOB),Y
        ROR
        ROR    ZPAGE_DRIVE
        JSR    rwts_slot_x_to_y
        PLA
        ASL
        BIT    ZPAGE_DRIVE
        BMI    .store_drive_1
        STA    TRACK_FOR_DRIVE_2,Y
        BPL    .end
    .store_drive_1:
        STA    TRACK_FOR_DRIVE_1,Y
    .end:
        RTS

```

Defines:

 rwts_set_track, used in chunks 236 and 243.
 Uses RWTs 209 and rwts_slot_x_to_y 241b.

```

243  <RWTS Format disk 243>≡ (250)
      rwts_format:
          ; Formats a disk.
          SUBROUTINE

              LDY      #$03
              LDA      (PTR2IOB),Y
              STA      FORMAT_VOLUME
              LDA      #$AA
              STA      PTR2BUF
              LDY      #$56
              LDA      #$00
              STA      FORMAT_TRACK

      .zbuf2:
              STA      PRIMARY_BUFF+255,Y
              DEY
              BNE      .zbuf2
      .zbuf1:
              STA      PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
              DEY
              BNE      .zbuf1
              LDA      #$50
              JSR      rwts_set_track
              LDA      #$28
              STA      SYNC_CTR
      .format_next_track:
              LDA      FORMAT_TRACK
              JSR      rwts_seek_track
              JSR      rwts_format_track
              LDA      #$08
              BCS      .format_err
              LDA      #$30
              STA      READ_CTR
      .read_again:
              SEC
              DEC      READ_CTR
              BEQ      .format_err
              JSR      READ_ADDR
              BCS      .read_again
              LDA      SECTOR_DSK
              BNE      .read_again
              JSR      READ
              BCS      .read_again
              INC      FORMAT_TRACK
              LDA      FORMAT_TRACK
              CMP      #$23
              BCC      .format_next_track
              CLC
              BCC      .format_done
      .format_err:

```

```
LDY      #$0D
STA      (PTR2IOB),Y
SEC
.format_done:
LDA      MOTOROFF,X
RTS
```

Defines:

rwts_format, used in chunk 236.

Uses PRIMARY_BUFF 233a, READ 226, READ_ADDR 228, rwts_format_track 245,
rwts_seek_track 240, and rwts_set_track 242.

```

245  <RWTS Format track 245>≡ (250)
      rwts_format_track:
          ; Formats a track.
          SUBROUTINE

              LDA    #$00
              STA    FORMAT_SECTOR
              LDY    #$80
              BNE    .do_addr
          .format_sector:
              LDY    SYNC_CTR
          .do_addr:
              JSR    WRITE_ADDR_HDR
              BCS    .return
              JSR    WRITE
              BCS    .return
              INC    FORMAT_SECTOR
              LDA    FORMAT_SECTOR
              CMP    #$10
              BCC    .format_sector
              LDY    #$0F
              STY    FORMAT_SECTOR
              LDA    #$30
              STA    READ_CTR
          .fill_sector_map:
              STA    SECTOR_FLAGS,Y
              DEY
              BPL    .fill_sector_map
              LDY    SYNC_CTR
          .bypass_syncs:
              JSR    .return
              JSR    .return
              JSR    .return
              PHA
              PLA
              NOP
              DEY
              BNE    .bypass_syncs
              JSR    READ_ADDR
              BCS    .reread_addr
              LDA    SECTOR_DSK
              BEQ    .read_next_data_sector
              LDA    #$10
              CMP    SYNC_CTR
              LDA    SYNC_CTR
              SBC    #$01
              STA    SYNC_CTR
              CMP    #$05
              BCS    .reread_addr
              SEC

```

```

        RTS
.read_next_addr:
        JSR     READ_ADDR
        BCS     .bad_read
.read_next_data_sector:
        JSR     READ
        BCC     .check_sector_map
.bad_read:
        DEC     READ_CTR
        BNE     .read_next_addr
.reread_addr:
        JSR     READ_ADDR
        BCS     .not_last
        LDA     SECTOR_DSK
        CMP     #$0F
        BNE     .not_last
        JSR     READ
        BCC     rwts_format_track
.not_last:
        DEC     READ_CTR
        BNE     .reread_addr
        SEC
.return:
        RTS
.check_sector_map:
        LDY     SECTOR_DSK
        LDA     SECTOR_FLAGS,Y
        BMI     .bad_read
        LDA     #$FF
        STA     SECTOR_FLAGS,Y
        DEC     FORMAT_SECTOR
        BPL     .read_next_addr
        LDA     FORMAT_TRACK
        BNE     .no_track_0
        LDA     SYNC_CTR
        CMP     #$10
        BCC     .return
        DEC     SYNC_CTR
        DEC     SYNC_CTR
.no_track_0:
        CLC
        RTS

```

Defines:

`rwts_format_track`, used in chunk 243.

Uses `READ` 226, `READ_ADDR` 228, `SECTOR_FLAGS` 247a, `WRITE` 223, and `WRITE_ADDR_HDR` 234.

247a $\langle \textit{RWTS Sector flags 247a} \rangle \equiv$ (250)

SECTOR_FLAGS:

```
HEX      FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF
HEX      FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF
```

Defines:

SECTOR_FLAGS, used in chunk 245.

247b $\langle \textit{RWTS Physical sector numbers 247b} \rangle \equiv$ (250)

PHYSECTOR:

```
HEX      00 04 08 0C 01 05 09 0D
HEX      02 06 0A 0E 03 07 0B 0F
```

Defines:

PHYSECTOR, used in chunk 236.

247c $\langle \textit{RWTS Clobber language card 247c} \rangle \equiv$ (250)

RWTS_CLOBBER_LANG_CARD:

SUBROUTINE

```
JSR      SETVID
LDA      PHASEON
LDA      PHASEON
LDA      #$00
STA      $E000
JMP      BACK_TO_BOOT2
HEX      00 00 00
```

Defines:

RWTS_CLOBBER_LANG_CARD, never used.

Uses SETVID 208.

247d $\langle \textit{RWTS Zero patch 247d} \rangle \equiv$ (250)

RWTS_ZERO_PATCH:

SUBROUTINE

```
STA      $1663
STA      $1670
STA      $1671
RTS
```

Defines:

RWTS_ZERO_PATCH, never used.

247e $\langle \textit{RWTS Patch 2 247e} \rangle \equiv$ (250)

RWTS_PATCH_2:

SUBROUTINE

```
JSR      $135B
STY      $16B7
RTS
```

Defines:

RWTS_PATCH_2, never used.

248 \langle *RWTS Disk full error patch* 248 $\rangle \equiv$ (250)

 RWTS_DISK_FULL_PATCH:

 SUBROUTINE

 JSR \$1A7E

 LDX \$1F9B

 TXS

 JSR \$0F16

 TSX

 STX \$1F9B

 LDA #\$09

 JMP \$1F85

Defines:

 RWTS_DISK_FULL_PATCH, never used.

```

249  <RWTS defines 249>≡ (206b)
    PHASEOFF      EQU    $C080
    PHASEON       EQU    $C081
    MOTOROFF      EQU    $C088
    MOTORON       EQU    $C089
    DRVOEN        EQU    $C08A
    DRV1EN        EQU    $C08B
    Q6L           EQU    $C08C
    Q6H           EQU    $C08D
    Q7L           EQU    $C08E
    Q7H           EQU    $C08F

    CURR_TRACK     EQU    $0478
    TRACK_FOR_DRIVE_1 EQU    $0478 ; reused
    RESEKCNT       EQU    $04F8
    TRACK_FOR_DRIVE_2 EQU    $04F8 ; reused
    READ_CTR       EQU    $0578
    SLOTPG5        EQU    $05F8
    SLOTPG6        EQU    $0678
    RECALIBCNT     EQU    $06F8

    RWTS_SCRATCH   EQU    $26
    RWTS_SCRATCH2  EQU    $27
    DEST_TRACK     EQU    $2A
    SLOT16         EQU    $2B
    CKSUM_ON_DISK  EQU    $2C
    SECTOR_DSK     EQU    $2D
    TRACK_ON_DISK  EQU    $2E
    VOLUME_ON_DISK EQU    $2F
    CHECKSUM_DISK  EQU    $2F ; reused
    ZPAGE_DRIVE    EQU    $35
    PTR2DCT        EQU    $3C ; 2 bytes
    PTR2BUF        EQU    $3E ; 2 bytes
    FORMAT_SECTOR  EQU    $3F ; reused
    FORMAT_VOLUME  EQU    $41
    FORMAT_TRACK   EQU    $44
    SYNC_CTR       EQU    $45
    MOTOR_TIME     EQU    $46 ; 2 bytes
    PTR2IOB        EQU    $48 ; 2 bytes
    DEBUG_JUMP     EQU    $7C
    SECTORS_PER_TRACK EQU    $7F

```

Uses DEBUG_JUMP 209 and SECTORS_PER_TRACK 209.

250 $\langle \textit{RWTS routines 250} \rangle \equiv$ (28b)

- $\langle \textit{RWTS Prenibble routine 221} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Write routine 223} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Write bytes 225a} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Postnibble routine 225b} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Read routine 226} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Read address 228} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Seek absolute 230} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Arm move delay 231} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Arm move delay tables 232a} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Write translate table 232b} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Unused area 232c} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Read translate table 232d} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Primary buffer 233a} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Secondary buffer 233b} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Write address header 234} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Write address header bytes 235a} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Unused area 2 235b} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Entry point 236} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS seek track 240} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS move arm 241a} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Slot X to Y 241b} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS set track 242} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Format disk 243} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Format track 245} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Sector flags 247a} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Physical sector numbers 247b} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Clobber language card 247c} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Zero patch 247d} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Patch 2 247e} \rangle$
- $\langle \textit{RWTS Disk full error patch 248} \rangle$

Chapter 18

Index

.abbreviation: [68](#)
.already_initted: [22b](#)
.check_for_alphabet_A1: [69b](#)
.check_for_good_2op: [121b](#)
.crlf: [70c](#)
.go_to_boot2: [23a](#)
.map_ascii_for_A2: [70b](#)
.not_found_in_page_table: [43](#)
.opcode_table_jump: [115](#)
.set_page_addr: [42](#)
.shift_alphabet: [67](#)
.shift_lock_alphabet: [67](#)
.space: [66b](#)
.z10bits: [71a](#)
.zcode_page_invalid: [41](#)
ADDA: [15a](#), [94](#), [134b](#)
ADDAC: [15b](#), [198](#)
ADDB: [16a](#), [149](#), [151b](#)
ADDB2: [16b](#), [95a](#), [95b](#), [96](#)
ADDW: [16c](#), [76](#), [93](#), [144](#), [169b](#), [170a](#), [171](#), [172a](#), [174b](#)
ADDWC: [16c](#), [17a](#), [101](#)
AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR: [36a](#), [43](#), [46](#), [209](#)
ARM_MOVE_DELAY: [226](#), [230](#), [231](#), [236](#)
A_mod_3: [67](#), [87a](#), [89](#), [106](#)
BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM: [22a](#), [22b](#), [22d](#), [24b](#)
BOOT1_SECTOR_XLAT_TABLE: [22c](#), [23b](#)
BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR: [22a](#), [22d](#), [23a](#), [24b](#)
BUFF_AREA: [53](#), [54](#), [60](#), [61a](#), [62a](#), [74](#), [111](#), [112](#), [153b](#), [154a](#), [156c](#), [157c](#), [209](#)
BUFF_END: [53](#), [54](#), [58a](#), [60](#), [61b](#), [62a](#), [74](#), [209](#)

BUFF_LINE_LEN: [61b](#), [62a](#), [209](#)
CH: [57](#), [72](#), [149](#), [208](#)
CLREOL: [57](#), [72](#), [149](#), [208](#)
COUT: [54](#), [58b](#), [208](#)
COUT1: [50](#), [53](#), [58a](#), [208](#)
CSW: [54](#), [58b](#), [208](#)
CURR_DISK_BUFF_ADDR: [209](#)
CURR_LINE: [51](#), [57](#), [74](#), [209](#)
CURR_OPCODE: [116](#), [119a](#), [120b](#), [121b](#), [123](#), [209](#)
CV: [72](#), [208](#)
DEBUG_JUMP: [26a](#), [115](#), [209](#), [249](#)
ENTRY_OFF: [230](#)
FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET: [137a](#), [211a](#)
FIRST_Z_PAGE: [31b](#), [36b](#), [44](#), [45](#), [209](#)
FRAME_STACK_COUNT: [130a](#), [132b](#), [133](#), [134d](#), [209](#)
FRAME_Z_SP: [130a](#), [132b](#), [133](#), [134d](#), [209](#)
GETLN1: [74](#), [208](#)
GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR: [35](#), [125](#), [127](#), [209](#)
HEADER_DICT_OFFSET: [93](#), [211a](#)
HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET: [74](#), [211a](#)
HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET: [137b](#), [196](#), [211a](#)
HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE: [155b](#), [211a](#)
HOME: [51](#), [208](#)
INCW: [14b](#), [39](#), [111](#), [112](#), [141](#), [142](#), [164a](#), [178a](#), [198](#)
INIT: [23a](#), [26a](#), [208](#)
INVFLG: [52](#), [57](#), [72](#), [149](#), [208](#)
IWMDATAPTR: [21b](#), [22d](#), [208](#)
IWMSECTOR: [22c](#), [208](#)
IWMSLTNDX: [21c](#), [22d](#), [23a](#), [208](#)
LAST_Z_PAGE: [31b](#), [36b](#), [44](#), [45](#), [209](#)
LOCAL_ZVARS: [125](#), [127](#), [131](#), [132a](#), [134b](#), [154b](#), [157b](#), [209](#)
LOCKED_ALPHABET: [63](#), [65](#), [67](#), [68](#), [84](#), [85b](#), [87a](#), [89](#), [209](#)
MOVB: [12b](#), [22d](#), [37](#), [87a](#), [130a](#), [132b](#), [133](#), [134b](#), [134d](#), [185a](#)
MOVW: [13a](#), [32b](#), [101](#), [104](#), [116](#), [118d](#), [120a](#), [120b](#), [130a](#), [132b](#), [133](#), [134d](#), [135](#),
[141](#), [155b](#), [158b](#), [170b](#), [173b](#), [175](#), [176](#), [177](#), [178a](#), [178b](#), [180b](#), [181a](#), [183a](#),
[184a](#), [186a](#), [187a](#), [189b](#), [190a](#), [190c](#), [197](#)
NEXT_PAGE_TABLE: [30](#), [31a](#), [36b](#), [45](#), [209](#)
NUM_IMAGE_PAGES: [33](#), [36a](#), [41](#), [46](#), [209](#)
OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET: [138c](#), [139b](#), [192](#), [201](#), [211a](#)
OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET: [138a](#), [139c](#), [183b](#), [194](#), [201](#), [211a](#)
OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET: [141](#), [144](#), [211a](#)
OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET: [139b](#), [140a](#), [200](#), [201](#), [211a](#)
OFF_TABLE: [230](#), [232a](#)
ON_OR_OFF: [230](#)
ON_TABLE: [230](#), [232a](#)
OPERANDO: [74](#), [76](#), [78b](#), [79a](#), [82](#), [118d](#), [120a](#), [122](#), [129](#), [130b](#), [132a](#), [135](#), [138a](#),

139a, 140a, 142, 144, 164a, 164b, 169a, 169b, 170a, 170b, 171, 172a, 173a, 173b, 174b, 175, 176, 177, 178a, 178c, 179a, 179b, 180a, 182a, 182b, 182c, 183a, 183b, 184a, 184b, 185a, 186a, 187a, 188a, 189b, 189c, 190a, 190b, 190c, 192, 194, 199, 200, 201, 209

OPERAND1: 76, 77a, 78b, 80, 81, 120b, 142, 169b, 170a, 170b, 171, 172a, 174b, 175, 176, 177, 178c, 179a, 180a, 180b, 181a, 182a, 183a, 183b, 184a, 185a, 193, 195, 196, 198, 201, 202, 209

OPERAND2: 171, 172a, 202, 209

OPERAND3: 209

OPERAND_COUNT: 116, 118d, 121a, 122, 132a, 181b, 209

PAGE_H_TABLE: 30, 31a, 43, 44, 46, 209

PAGE_L_TABLE: 30, 31a, 43, 44, 46, 209

PAGE_TABLE_INDEX: 41, 43, 46, 209

PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2: 43, 46, 209

PHYSECTOR: 236, 247b

POSTNIBBLE: 225b, 236

PRENIBBLE: 221, 236

PREV_PAGE_TABLE: 30, 31a, 45, 209

PRIMARY_BUFF: 221, 223, 225b, 226, 233a, 243

PRINTER_CSW: 30, 54, 58b, 209

PROMPT: 52, 208

PSHW: 13b, 101, 104, 164a, 201

PULB: 13c, 132b

PULW: 14a, 101, 104, 164a, 201

RDKEY: 57, 149, 151a, 152, 208

RDSECT_PTR: 21c, 22d, 208

READ: 226, 236, 243, 245

READ_ADDR: 228, 236, 243, 245

READ_XLAT_TABLE: 232d

ROLW: 18c, 104

RORW: 19, 101

RWTS: 25, 110, 209, 236, 242

RWTS_CLOBBER_LANG_CARD: 247c

RWTS_DISK_FULL_PATCH: 248

RWTS_PATCH_2: 247e

RWTS_ZERO_PATCH: 247d

RWTS_entry: 25, 236

SCRATCH1: 32b, 33, 43, 46, 81, 84, 85b, 86b, 87a, 87b, 87c, 89, 90a, 90b, 92, 94, 95a, 95b, 96, 97a, 97b, 99b, 101, 104, 105a, 105b, 107, 110, 111, 112, 115, 125, 127, 132a, 134b, 134c, 139b, 140b, 141, 142, 143a, 143b, 144, 151b, 167c, 168, 175, 176, 177, 178a, 180b, 181a, 183a, 184a, 185a, 185b, 191, 196, 197, 203b, 209

SCRATCH2: 32b, 33, 37, 38, 39, 41, 43, 44, 45, 46, 48a, 48b, 49, 50, 57, 62b, 64, 68, 72, 83, 84, 85a, 86b, 93, 94, 95a, 95b, 96, 97b, 98, 99b, 101, 104, 105a, 105b, 107, 110, 111, 112, 115, 117b, 118d, 119b, 120a, 120b, 121c, 122, 123, 124a, 124b, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130a, 131, 132a, 132b, 134a, 134b, 134c,

134d, 135, 136, 137a, 137b, 138a, 138b, 138c, 139b, 139c, 140a, 140b, 141, 142, 143b, 144, 145a, 145b, 147, 149, 151a, 152, 153c, 154a, 154b, 155a, 155b, 157b, 157c, 158a, 158b, 163a, 164a, 164b, 166, 167a, 167b, 167c, 168, 169b, 170a, 170b, 171, 172a, 173b, 174b, 175, 176, 177, 178a, 178b, 178c, 179a, 179b, 180a, 181a, 183a, 183b, 184a, 185a, 186a, 187a, 189b, 190a, 190c, 191, 192, 194, 196, 197, 198, 199, 201, 202, 203b, 205, 209

SCRATCH3: 62b, 66a, 67, 69a, 70b, 71a, 76, 77b, 77c, 78a, 78b, 79a, 79b, 80, 81, 82, 84, 85a, 85b, 87c, 89, 90a, 90b, 90c, 91a, 92, 94, 95a, 95b, 96, 101, 104, 107, 132a, 134b, 134c, 143a, 155b, 158b, 185b, 191, 203b, 209

SECONDARY_BUFF: 221, 223, 225b, 226, 233b

SECTORS_PER_TRACK: 26a, 110, 209, 249

SECTOR_FLAGS: 245, 247a

SEEKABS: 230, 241a

SEPARATORS_TABLE: 83

SETKBD: 23a, 26a, 208

SETVID: 23a, 26a, 208, 247c

SHIFT_ALPHABET: 63, 65, 67, 68, 209

STACK_COUNT: 30, 38, 39, 132b, 133, 154b, 157b, 209

STOB: 12b, 21c, 26a, 30, 31b, 65, 107, 116, 118d, 121a, 130a, 132a, 135

STOW: 11, 30, 31b, 32b, 57, 101, 104, 107, 111, 112, 117b, 119b, 121c, 123, 129, 134b, 143a, 147, 149, 151a, 152, 153c, 154b, 155a, 157b, 158a, 205

STOW2: 12a, 112

SUBB: 17b, 38, 96, 134c, 164b, 167b, 186a

SUBB2: 18a, 95b

SUBW: 18b, 97b, 98, 178c, 198

TMP_Z_PC: 116, 209

VAR_CURR_ROOM: 72, 211b

VAR_MAX_SCORE: 72, 211b

VAR_SCORE: 72, 211b

VTAB: 72, 208

WNETBM: 52, 57, 208

WNETLFT: 52, 208

WNETTOP: 51, 52, 57, 74, 208

WNETDTH: 52, 58a, 60, 61a, 62a, 208

WRITE: 223, 236, 245

WRITE1: 223, 225a

WRITE2: 223, 225a

WRITE3: 223, 225a

WRITE_ADDR_HDR: 234, 245

WRITE_BYTE2: 234, 235a

WRITE_BYTE3: 234, 235a

WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE: 234, 235a

WRITE_XLAT_TABLE: 223, 232b

ZCHARS_H: 64, 68, 209

ZCHARS_L: 64, 68, 209

ZCHAR_SCRATCH1: 30, 78a, 79a, 79b, 85a, 86b, 209

ZCHAR_SCRATCH2: [84](#), [87b](#), [88](#), [89](#), [90b](#), [92](#), [95a](#), [96](#), [209](#)
ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR: [40](#), [42](#), [71b](#), [209](#)
ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2: [46](#), [71b](#), [209](#)
ZCODE_PAGE_VALID: [30](#), [40](#), [42](#), [46](#), [71b](#), [130a](#), [135](#), [157b](#), [168](#), [209](#)
ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2: [30](#), [43](#), [46](#), [49](#), [68](#), [71b](#), [209](#)
ZDECOMPRESS_STATE: [64](#), [65](#), [68](#), [209](#)
Z_ABBREV_TABLE: [35](#), [68](#), [209](#)
Z_PC: [34d](#), [40](#), [41](#), [43](#), [71b](#), [116](#), [125](#), [130a](#), [130b](#), [134d](#), [153c](#), [157b](#), [168](#), [209](#)
Z_PC2_H: [46](#), [48b](#), [49](#), [68](#), [71b](#), [209](#)
Z_PC2_HH: [46](#), [48b](#), [49](#), [68](#), [71b](#), [209](#)
Z_PC2_L: [46](#), [48b](#), [49](#), [68](#), [71b](#), [209](#)
Z_SP: [30](#), [38](#), [39](#), [132b](#), [133](#), [209](#)
a2_table: [70a](#), [70b](#), [91b](#)
ascii_to_zchar: [81](#), [84](#)
attr_ptr_and_mask: [142](#), [185b](#), [191](#), [203b](#)
boot1: [21a](#)
boot2: [25](#)
boot2_dct: [27a](#), [27b](#)
boot2_iob: [25](#), [27a](#)
boot2_iob.buffer: [27a](#)
boot2_iob.command: [27a](#)
boot2_iob.dct_addr: [27a](#)
boot2_iob.sector: [27a](#)
boot2_iob.track: [27a](#)
branch: [155c](#), [159a](#), [165a](#), [181a](#), [182a](#), [182b](#), [182c](#), [184b](#)
branch_to_offset: [167b](#), [186a](#)
brk: [34a](#), [34b](#), [34c](#), [36a](#), [38](#), [39](#), [162](#), [181b](#), [197](#), [202](#)
buffer_char: [60](#), [62b](#), [69a](#), [70c](#), [72](#), [107](#), [108](#), [148a](#), [150a](#), [150b](#), [186b](#), [188b](#),
[189c](#)
buffer_char_set_buffer_end: [59](#), [60](#)
check_sign: [99b](#), [175](#), [176](#), [177](#)
cmp16: [105b](#), [181a](#), [183a](#), [184a](#)
cmpu16: [105a](#), [105b](#), [185a](#)
copy_data_from_buff: [157b](#), [157c](#), [158a](#)
copy_data_to_buff: [153c](#), [154a](#), [154b](#), [155a](#)
cout_string: [50](#), [57](#), [72](#), [149](#)
dct: [109](#), [112](#)
dec_var: [164b](#), [174a](#), [180b](#)
divu16: [104](#), [107](#), [175](#), [176](#), [178a](#)
do_chk: [180b](#), [181a](#)
do_instruction: [36b](#), [77a](#), [77b](#), [116](#), [132b](#), [163a](#), [163b](#), [165b](#), [168](#), [170b](#), [171](#),
[172a](#), [172b](#), [173b](#), [173c](#), [174a](#), [188b](#), [189a](#), [189c](#), [190a](#), [190b](#), [191](#), [201](#), [202](#),
[203a](#), [203b](#), [204a](#)
do_reset_window: [31c](#), [32a](#)
do_rwts_on_sector: [110](#), [111](#), [112](#)
dump_buffer_line: [56](#), [58a](#), [72](#), [74](#), [149](#), [151a](#), [152](#)

dump_buffer_to_printer: [54](#), [56](#), [74](#)
dump_buffer_to_screen: [53](#), [56](#), [72](#)
dump_buffer_with_more: [57](#), [60](#), [61b](#), [147](#), [149](#), [151a](#), [151b](#), [152](#), [204b](#), [205](#)
entry_off_end: [230](#)
find_index_of_page_table: [41](#), [44](#), [46](#)
flip_sign: [99a](#), [99b](#)
get_alphabet: [63](#), [66a](#), [67](#)
get_alphabet_for_char: [85b](#), [86a](#), [86b](#), [90a](#)
get_const_byte: [118b](#), [120a](#), [120b](#), [122](#), [124a](#)
get_const_word: [118a](#), [122](#), [124b](#)
get_dictionary_addr: [83](#), [93](#), [94](#)
get_next_code_byte: [40](#), [42](#), [116](#), [117a](#), [124a](#), [124b](#), [125](#), [127](#), [130c](#), [131](#), [165a](#),
[165b](#), [166](#)
get_next_code_byte2: [46](#), [48a](#), [170a](#)
get_next_code_word: [48a](#), [64](#), [169b](#)
get_next_zchar: [64](#), [66a](#), [68](#), [71a](#)
get_nonstack_var: [125](#), [126](#)
get_object_addr: [136](#), [138a](#), [138c](#), [140a](#), [141](#), [142](#), [144](#), [183b](#), [192](#), [194](#), [200](#),
[201](#)
get_property_len: [145b](#), [146](#), [197](#), [199](#), [202](#)
get_property_num: [145a](#), [193](#), [195](#), [198](#), [202](#)
get_property_ptr: [144](#), [193](#), [195](#), [198](#), [202](#)
get_random: [178a](#), [178b](#)
get_top_of_stack: [125](#)
get_var_content: [118c](#), [120a](#), [120b](#), [122](#), [125](#)
good_read: [43](#), [46](#), [226](#), [228](#)
home: [51](#), [52](#), [147](#)
illegal_opcode: [113](#), [117b](#), [119a](#), [121b](#), [123](#), [162](#)
inc_sector_and_read: [111](#), [158b](#)
inc_sector_and_write: [112](#), [155b](#)
inc_var: [164a](#), [173c](#), [181a](#)
instr_add: [113](#), [174b](#)
instr_and: [113](#), [179a](#)
instr_call: [113](#), [129](#)
instr_clear_attr: [113](#), [191](#)
instr_dec: [113](#), [174a](#)
instr_dec_chk: [113](#), [180b](#)
instr_div: [113](#), [175](#)
instr_get_next_prop: [113](#), [193](#)
instr_get_parent: [113](#), [194](#)
instr_get_prop: [113](#), [195](#)
instr_get_prop_addr: [113](#), [198](#)
instr_get_prop_len: [113](#), [199](#)
instr_get_sibling: [113](#), [200](#)
instr_inc: [113](#), [173c](#)
instr_inc_chk: [113](#), [181a](#)

`instr_insert_obj`: [113](#), [201](#)
`instr_je`: [113](#), [181b](#)
`instr_jg`: [113](#), [183a](#)
`instr_jin`: [113](#), [183b](#)
`instr_jl`: [113](#), [184a](#)
`instr_jump`: [113](#), [186a](#)
`instr_jz`: [113](#), [184b](#)
`instr_load`: [113](#), [169a](#)
`instr_loadb`: [113](#), [170a](#)
`instr_loadw`: [113](#), [169b](#)
`instr_mod`: [113](#), [176](#)
`instr_mul`: [113](#), [177](#)
`instr_new_line`: [113](#), [188b](#)
`instr_nop`: [113](#), [204a](#)
`instr_not`: [113](#), [179b](#)
`instr_or`: [113](#), [180a](#)
`instr_pop`: [113](#), [172b](#)
`instr_print`: [113](#), [189a](#)
`instr_print_addr`: [113](#), [189b](#)
`instr_print_char`: [113](#), [189c](#)
`instr_print_num`: [113](#), [190a](#)
`instr_print_obj`: [113](#), [190b](#)
`instr_print_paddr`: [113](#), [190c](#)
`instr_print_ret`: [113](#), [186b](#)
`instr_pull`: [113](#), [173a](#)
`instr_push`: [113](#), [173b](#)
`instr_put_prop`: [113](#), [202](#)
`instr_quit`: [113](#), [205](#)
`instr_random`: [113](#), [178a](#)
`instr_remove_obj`: [113](#), [203a](#)
`instr_restart`: [113](#), [204b](#)
`instr_restore`: [113](#), [156b](#)
`instr_ret`: [113](#), [133](#), [187a](#), [188a](#)
`instr_ret_popped`: [113](#), [187a](#)
`instr_rfalse`: [113](#), [167a](#), [187b](#)
`instr_rtrue`: [113](#), [167a](#), [186b](#), [188a](#)
`instr_save`: [113](#), [153a](#)
`instr_set_attr`: [113](#), [203b](#)
`instr_sread`: [76](#), [113](#)
`instr_store`: [113](#), [170b](#)
`instr_storeb`: [113](#), [172a](#)
`instr_storew`: [113](#), [171](#)
`instr_sub`: [113](#), [178c](#)
`instr_test`: [113](#), [185a](#)
`instr_test_attr`: [113](#), [185b](#)
`invalidate_zcode_page2`: [49](#)

iob: [109](#), [110](#), [150a](#), [150b](#), [152](#)
iob.buffer: [109](#)
iob.command: [109](#)
iob.drive: [109](#)
iob.sector: [109](#)
iob.slot_times_16: [109](#)
iob.track: [109](#)
is_dict_separator: [78b](#), [79b](#), [83](#)
is_separator: [79a](#), [82](#), [83](#)
is_std_separator: [78b](#), [83](#)
load.address: [48b](#), [141](#), [169b](#), [170a](#), [189b](#)
load_packed_address: [49](#), [68](#), [190c](#)
locate_last_ram_addr: [37](#)
main: [26a](#), [29a](#), [32b](#), [33](#), [43](#), [46](#), [204b](#), [206b](#)
match_dictionary_word: [81](#), [94](#)
mulu16: [101](#), [177](#)
negate: [98](#), [99a](#), [100](#), [108](#)
negated_branch: [156a](#), [159b](#), [165a](#), [181a](#), [182c](#), [183a](#), [183b](#), [184a](#), [184b](#), [185a](#),
[185b](#), [192](#)
next.property: [146](#), [193](#), [195](#), [198](#), [202](#)
please_insert_save_diskette: [147](#), [153a](#), [156b](#)
please_reinsert_game_diskette: [152](#), [155c](#), [156a](#), [159a](#), [159b](#)
pop: [39](#), [125](#), [128](#), [134a](#), [134c](#), [134d](#), [172b](#), [173a](#), [187a](#)
pop.push: [126](#), [128](#)
print_ascii_string: [62b](#), [147](#), [149](#), [151a](#), [152](#), [205](#)
print_negative_num: [107](#), [108](#)
print_number: [72](#), [107](#), [190a](#)
print_obj_in_A: [72](#), [141](#), [190b](#)
print_status_line: [72](#), [76](#)
print_zstring: [65](#), [68](#), [71b](#), [141](#), [163b](#)
print_zstring_and_next: [163b](#), [189b](#), [190c](#)
printer_card_initialized_flag: [54](#)
prompt_offset: [148a](#), [148b](#), [149](#), [150a](#), [150b](#)
push: [38](#), [127](#), [128](#), [130a](#), [131](#), [132b](#), [173b](#)
push_and_check_obj: [192](#), [200](#)
read.error: [226](#), [228](#)
read_from_sector: [32b](#), [33](#), [43](#), [46](#), [111](#)
read_line: [74](#), [76](#)
read_next_sector: [111](#), [156c](#), [158a](#)
remove_obj: [138a](#), [201](#), [203a](#)
reset_window: [32a](#), [52](#)
ret_a: [187b](#), [188a](#)
routines_table_0op: [113](#), [117b](#)
routines_table_1op: [113](#), [119b](#)
routines_table_2op: [113](#), [121c](#)
routines_table_var: [113](#), [123](#)

rwts_format: [236](#), [243](#)
rwts_format_track: [243](#), [245](#)
rwts_move_arm: [240](#), [241a](#)
rwts_seek_track: [236](#), [240](#), [243](#)
rwts_set_track: [236](#), [242](#), [243](#)
rwts_slot_x_to_y: [241a](#), [241b](#), [242](#)
sDrivePrompt: [148b](#), [150b](#)
sInternalError: [211c](#)
sPleaseInsert: [147](#), [148b](#)
sPositionPrompt: [148a](#), [148b](#)
sPressReturnToContinue: [152](#)
sReinsertGameDiskette: [152](#)
sReturnToBegin: [148b](#), [151a](#)
sScore: [72](#)
sSlotPrompt: [148a](#), [148b](#), [149](#), [150a](#), [150b](#)
save_drive: [148b](#), [150b](#), [236](#)
save_position: [148a](#), [148b](#), [151b](#)
save_slot: [148b](#), [149](#), [150a](#)
search_nonalpha_table: [91a](#), [91b](#)
sector_count: [25](#), [26a](#)
separator_found: [83](#)
separator_not_found: [83](#)
set_page_first: [41](#), [43](#), [45](#), [46](#)
set_sign: [100](#), [177](#)
skip_separators: [77c](#), [82](#)
store_A_and_next: [163a](#), [193](#), [199](#)
store_and_next: [129](#), [135](#), [163a](#), [169a](#), [169b](#), [170a](#), [174b](#), [176](#), [177](#), [178a](#), [178c](#),
[179a](#), [179b](#), [180a](#), [194](#), [196](#), [197](#), [198](#)
store_var: [127](#), [163a](#), [192](#)
store_zero_and_next: [163a](#), [193](#), [198](#)
stretch_to_branch: [181a](#), [183a](#), [183b](#), [184a](#), [185a](#), [185b](#)
stretch_var_put: [170b](#), [173a](#)
stretchy_z_compress: [89](#)
take_branch: [184b](#), [192](#)
var_get: [72](#), [126](#), [164a](#), [164b](#), [169a](#)
var_put: [128](#), [164a](#), [170b](#)
write_next_sector: [112](#), [154b](#), [155a](#)
z_compress: [87c](#), [88](#), [89](#), [90b](#), [92](#)